

TIGHTENING CURVES AND GRAPHS ON SURFACES

BY

HSIEN-CHIH CHANG

DISSERTATION

Submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements  
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Computer Science  
in the Graduate College of the  
University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2018

Urbana, Illinois

Doctoral Committee:

Professor Jeff Erickson, Chair  
Professor Chandra Chekuri  
Professor Nathan M. Dunfield  
Professor David Eppstein  
Associate Professor Alexandra Kolla



f

獻給 親愛的爸爸媽媽  
謝謝你們的愛



# Abstract

6 Any continuous deformation of closed curves on a surface can be decomposed into a finite sequence of local changes  
7 on the structure of the curves; we refer to such local operations as *homotopy moves*. *Tightening* is the process of  
8 deforming given curves into their minimum position; that is, those with minimum number of self-intersections.  
9 While such operations and the tightening process has been studied extensively, surprisingly little is known about  
10 the *quantitative* bounds on the number of homotopy moves required to tighten an arbitrary curve.

11 An unexpected connection exists between homotopy moves and a set of local operations on graphs called  
12 *electrical transformations*. Electrical transformations have been used to simplify electrical networks since the 19th  
13 century; later they have been used for solving various combinatorial problems on graphs, as well as applications in  
14 statistical mechanics, robotics, and quantum mechanics. Steinitz, in his study of 3-dimensional polytopes, looked  
15 at the electrical transformations through the lens of medial construction, and implicitly established the connection  
16 to homotopy moves; later the same observation has been discovered independently in the context of knots.

17 In this thesis, we study the process of tightening curves on surfaces using homotopy moves and their con-  
18 sequences on electrical transformations from a quantitative perspective. To derive upper and lower bounds we  
19 utilize tools like curve invariants, surface theory, combinatorial topology, and hyperbolic geometry. We develop  
20 several new tools to construct efficient algorithms on tightening curves and graphs, as well as to present examples  
21 where no efficient algorithm exists. We then argue that in order to study electrical transformations, intuitively it is  
22 most beneficial to work with *monotonic* homotopy moves instead, where no new crossings are created throughout  
23 the process; ideas and proof techniques that work for monotonic homotopy moves should transfer to those for  
24 electrical transformations. We present conjectures and partial evidence supporting the argument.



# Acknowledgments

25 First I would like to express my most sincere gratitude towards my Ph.D. advisor, Jeff Erickson, for your guidance  
26 throughout the years. It is an honor to be your student. You always give me the most honest advice; every meeting  
27 with you is fun and fruitful. Most of all, your patience and listening ears lighten the burden when life was difficult  
28 and research was slow. I am forever grateful to know you as a colleague, and a friend.

29 It is always joyful to talk to Sariel Har-Peled, either about research or just random fun. Thank you for  
30 introducing me around on my first day in school, and all the ideas and advice (and jokes!) you shared with me. I  
31 want to thank Alexandra Kolla for your constant support and trust. Thank you for always giving me opportunities  
32 to travel and collaborate, even when no progress has been made for a long time.

33 The theory group in University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign provides the most healthy research environment  
34 for me to grow as a young researcher. The collaborative atmosphere allows us to explore freely among the topics  
35 that interest us. I am fortunate to have so many great colleagues to work and share experience with, and sometimes  
36 just having fun together in the last few wonderful years: Shashank Agrawal, Matthew Bauer, Shant Boodaghians,  
37 Charles Carlson, Timothy Chan, Karthik Chandrasekaran, Chandra Chekuri, Kyle Fox, Shamoli Gupta, Mitchell  
38 Jones, Konstantinos Koiliaris, Nirman Kumar, Patrick Lin, Vivek Madan, Sahand Mozaffari, Kent Quanrud, Benjamin  
39 Raichel, Tasos Sidiropoulos, Matus Telgarsky, Ross Vasko, Yipu Wang, Chao Xu, Ching-Hua Yu, Xilin Yu, and many  
40 more that I didn't have the chance to know better.

41 I am very fortunate to have the chance of working with great people all around the world: Paweł Gawrychowski,  
42 Naonori Kakimura, David Letscher, Arnaud de Mesmay, Shay Mozes, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan Thurston,  
43 Stephan Tillmann, and Oren Weimann. Working together with similar minds on interesting projects is much more  
44 fun than working alone. Also, I want to express my thanks to Erin Chambers, Ho-Lin Chen, Kai-Min Chung, Joshua  
45 Grochow, Chung-Shou Liao, Michael Pelsmajer, and Marcus Schaefer for providing me opportunities to travel and  
46 discuss research with you.

47 Without the days working with friends in the theory group of National Taiwan University, I might not even  
48 pursue the career of being a theoretical computer scientist. Thanks to Hsueh-I Lu for your inspiring lectures,  
49 guidance, and advice on research that lead me to where I am.

50 最後，特別感謝妻子祈祈與昕恒；你們是我生命中的喜樂。與妳攜手同行使我知道，愛是最大的奧秘。  
51 Finally, special thanks to Chichi and Luke; you are the joy of my life. Being with you made me realize that love is  
52 the greatest mystery.

# Table of Contents

53		
54	<b>Chapter 1 Introduction and History</b>	1
55	1.1 Homotopy Moves . . . . .	1
56	1.2 Electrical Transformations . . . . .	3
57	1.3 Relation between Two Local Operations . . . . .	4
58	1.4 Results and Outline of the Thesis . . . . .	5
59	1.5 History and Related Work . . . . .	5
60	1.6 Acknowledgment . . . . .	7
61	<b>Chapter 2 Preliminaries</b>	9
62	2.1 Surfaces . . . . .	9
63	2.2 Curves and Graphs on Surfaces . . . . .	9
64	2.2.1 Curves . . . . .	9
65	2.2.2 Graphs and Their Embeddings . . . . .	10
66	2.2.3 Curves as 4-regular Maps . . . . .	10
67	2.2.4 Jordan Curve Theorem . . . . .	11
68	2.2.5 Multicurves . . . . .	11
69	2.2.6 Tangles . . . . .	11
70	2.3 Homotopy . . . . .	12
71	2.3.1 Covering Spaces and Fundamental Groups . . . . .	12
72	2.3.2 Lifting . . . . .	12
73	2.4 Combinatorial Properties of Curves . . . . .	13
74	2.4.1 Monogons and Bigons . . . . .	13
75	2.4.2 Homotopy Moves . . . . .	13
76	2.4.3 Signs and Winding Numbers . . . . .	13
77	2.5 Relating Graphs to Curves . . . . .	14
78	2.5.1 Medial Construction . . . . .	14
79	2.5.2 Facial Electrical Moves . . . . .	14
80	2.5.3 Depths of Planar and Annular Multicurves . . . . .	15
81	2.5.4 Smoothing . . . . .	15
82	2.6 Tightening Curves via Bigon Removal . . . . .	16
83	<b>Chapter 3 Curve Invariant — Defect</b>	17
84	3.1 Defect Lower Bound . . . . .	18
85	3.1.1 Flat Torus Knots . . . . .	18
86	3.1.2 Defects of arbitrary flat torus knots . . . . .	20
87	3.2 Defect Upper Bound . . . . .	23
88	3.2.1 Winding Numbers and Diameter . . . . .	23
89	3.2.2 Inclusion-Exclusion . . . . .	24
90	3.2.3 Divide and Conquer . . . . .	27
91	3.3 Medial Defect is Independent of Planar Embeddings . . . . .	29
92	3.3.1 Navigating Between Planar Embeddings . . . . .	29
93	3.3.2 Tangle Flips . . . . .	30
94	3.4 Implications for Random Knots . . . . .	31

95	<b>Chapter 4 Lower Bounds for Tightening Curves</b>	33
96	4.1 Lower Bounds for Planar Curves . . . . .	33
97	4.1.1 Multicurves . . . . .	34
98	4.2 Quadratic Bound for Curves on Surfaces . . . . .	36
99	4.3 Quadratic Bound for Contractible Curves on Surfaces . . . . .	38
100	4.3.1 Traces and Types . . . . .	38
101	4.3.2 A Bad Contractible Annular Curve . . . . .	39
102	4.3.3 More Complicated Surfaces . . . . .	40
103	<b>Chapter 5 Tightening Planar Curves</b>	43
104	5.1 Planar Curves . . . . .	43
105	5.1.1 Contracting Simple Loops . . . . .	43
106	5.1.2 Tangles . . . . .	44
107	5.1.3 Main Algorithm . . . . .	46
108	5.1.4 Efficient Implementation . . . . .	46
109	5.2 Planar Multicurves . . . . .	47
110	<b>Chapter 6 Tightening Curves on Surfaces</b>	51
111	6.1 Singular Bigons and Singular Monogons . . . . .	51
112	6.2 Surfaces with Boundary . . . . .	52
113	6.2.1 Removing a Basic Singular Bigon . . . . .	53
114	6.3 Surfaces Without Boundary . . . . .	56
115	6.3.1 Dual Reduced Cut Graphs . . . . .	56
116	6.3.2 Isoperimetric Inequality . . . . .	57
117	6.3.3 Coarse Homotopy . . . . .	58
118	6.3.4 Fine Homotopy . . . . .	60
119	6.4 Tightening Curves Using Monotonic Homotopy Moves . . . . .	63
120	6.4.1 Moving Curves Close to Geodesics . . . . .	64
121	<b>Chapter 7 Electrical Transformations</b>	69
122	7.1 Types of Electrical Transformations . . . . .	69
123	7.2 Connection Between Electrical and Homotopy Moves . . . . .	70
124	7.2.1 Smoothing Lemma—Inductive case . . . . .	71
125	7.2.2 In the Plane . . . . .	73
126	7.2.3 In the Annulus . . . . .	74
127	7.2.4 Towards Connection between Electrical and Monotonic Homotopy Moves . . . . .	76
128	7.3 Lower Bounds on Electrical Transformations . . . . .	79
129	7.3.1 Plane Graphs . . . . .	79
130	7.3.2 Two-Terminal Plane Graphs . . . . .	80
131	7.3.3 Planar Electrical Transformations . . . . .	82
132	7.3.4 Terminal-Leaf Contractions . . . . .	83
133	<b>Chapter 8 Conclusions and Open Problems</b>	85
134	8.1 Feo-Provan Conjecture . . . . .	85
135	8.1.1 Feo-Provan’s Algorithm . . . . .	86
136	8.1.2 Steinitz’s Algorithm . . . . .	86
137	8.1.3 Curves where All Bigons are Large . . . . .	88
138	8.2 Homotopy Moves on Low-genus Surfaces . . . . .	89
139	8.2.1 Tangles . . . . .	89
140	8.2.2 Projective Plane . . . . .	90
141	8.3 Monotonic Homotopy Moves on Arbitrary Surfaces . . . . .	90
142	<b>References</b>	91



# Chapter 1

## Introduction and History

143

*Say you're me and you're in math class, and your teacher's talking about ... Well,  
who knows what your teacher's talking about. Probably a good time to start doodling.*

— Vi Hart, *Doodling in Math Class*

144

一角兩角三角形，四角五角六角半。

*One-gon, two-gon, tri-angle; four-gon, five-gon, six-gon half.*

— Mandarin fingerplay

145

Given an arbitrary closed curve on some 2-dimensional surface, it is natural to look for ways to modify or deform the curve continuously into its “simplest” form. The meaning of “simple” varies according to the applications. To fix the terminology, our goal is to *tighten* the curve via continuous deformation (known as *homotopy*) into another closed curve with minimum complexity. Common complexity measures include the *time* to minimize the length of the curve [23, 29, 30, 54, 63, 65, 82, 140, 162]; the *area* of the homotopy [39, 98, 183, 255]; the *height* of the homotopy [28, 35, 36, 38, 133]; the *width* of the homotopy [32, 34]; and other properties desired for the process, like simplicity and monotonicity [37, 40, 41, 42]. Most of the measures studied inherently require some existing *geometry* associated with the surface and the curve. However, in some instances of the curve tightening problem, the input curve is only supplied by—or differentiated up to—its combinatorial structure, and therefore a better complexity measure, preferably based only on the changes to the structure, is desired.

155

Consider the following scenario: Given two curves in the plane, we want to decide which curve is more complicated than the other. Various methods are known to measure the “curviness” of the drawings, which can be served as a way to decide the complexity of the curves. However, there are cases when “curviness” might not be the most suited measure. For example, when the input curves are hand-drawn symbols, the length and shape of the curves vary drastically from one drawing to the other. What is invariant is the combinatorial structure of the hand drawing, that is, what “symbols” they really are. Naïve measure like counting the number of crossings in the symbols helps, but it does not solve the problem as the number of planar curves with a fixed number of crossings grows exponentially.

163

In this thesis we propose and study the following *topological* complexity measure—the number of local operations called *homotopy moves* that change the combinatorial structure—for tightening closed curves on arbitrary surfaces. Such local operations have been studied in topology since almost a hundred years ago [6, 7, 104, 105, 202, 239]; however, to the best of our knowledge, no previous work has tackled the problem from a quantitative perspective.

168

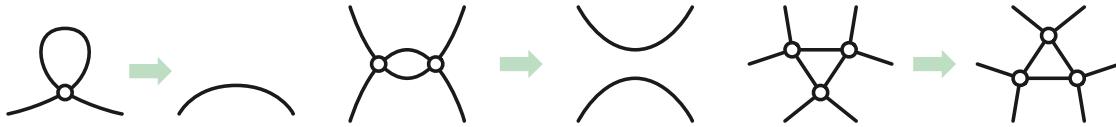
### 1.1 Homotopy Moves

169

*Homotopy* is the process of continuously deforming one curve to the other. For the sake of discretizing the process, we assume throughout the rest of the thesis that all the curves are *generic*—every self-intersection is formed by

171 exactly two subpaths crossing each other properly without tangency (that is, a *transverse double intersection*).  
 172 In this case, one can summarize the changes to the combinatorial structure of the curve on a surface during the  
 173 homotopy using the following set of local operations:

- 174 • 1 $\leftrightarrow$ 0: Remove/add an empty *monogon*.
- 175 • 2 $\leftrightarrow$ 0: Remove/add an empty *bigon*.
- 176 • 3 $\rightarrow$ 3: Flip an empty *triangle*; equivalently, move one strand across a self-intersection point.



**Figure 1.1.** Homotopy moves 1 $\rightarrow$ 0, 2 $\rightarrow$ 0, and 3 $\rightarrow$ 3.

177 Each homotopy move is performed by continuously deforming the curve inside an open disk embedded on the  
 178 surface, meeting  $\gamma$  as shown in Figure 1.1. Consequently, we call these operations **homotopy moves**. Our notation  
 179 is mnemonic; the numbers before and after each arrow indicate the number of local vertices before and after the  
 180 move. (Similar notation has been used by Thurston [236].)

181 Homotopy moves are “shadows” of the classical Reidemeister moves used to manipulate knot and link dia-  
 182 grams [7, 202]. A compactness argument, first explicitly given by Titus [239] and Francis [104, 105] but implicit  
 183 in earlier work of Alexander [6], Alexander and Briggs [7], and Reidemeister [202], implies that any continuous  
 184 deformation between two generic closed curves on any surface is equivalent to—and therefore, any generic curve  
 185 can be tightened by—a finite sequence of homotopy moves.

186 It is natural to ask *how many* homotopy moves are required to tighten a given closed curve on a surface to  
 187 another curve with minimum number of self-intersections (known as the *geometric intersection number*). An  
 188 algorithm to tighten any planar closed curve using at most  $O(n^2)$  homotopy moves is implicit in Steinitz’s proof  
 189 that every 3-connected planar graph is the 1-skeleton of a convex polyhedron [230, 231]. (See Section 2.6 for a  
 190 more detailed discussion on Steinitz’s algorithm.) The  $O(n^2)$  upper bound also follows from algorithms for *regular*  
 191 homotopy, which forbids 0 $\leftrightarrow$ 1 moves, by Francis [103], Vegter [251] (for polygonal curves), and Nowik [185].

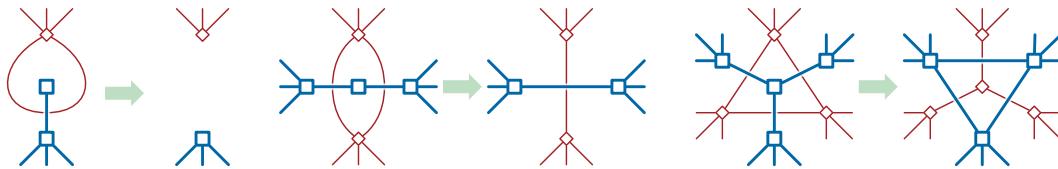
192 On higher-genus orientable surfaces, a result of Hass and Scott [135] implies that every non-simple closed  
 193 curve that is homotopic to a simple closed curve can be tightened using  $O(n^2)$  moves, essentially by applying  
 194 Steinitz’s algorithm. Similar result for arbitrary curves on the torus can be derived and extracted from Hass and  
 195 Scott [135]. De Graaf and Schrijver [125] proved that arbitrary curves on the annulus can be tightened using at  
 196 most  $O(n^2)$  moves.

197 When both the surface and the curve are unrestricted, Hass and Scott [136] and de Graaf and Schrijver [125]  
 198 independently proved that any closed curve on any surface can be tightened using a *finite* number of homotopy  
 199 moves that never increase the number of self-intersections. Both results use discrete variants of curve-shortening  
 200 flow. Grayson [126] and Angenent [9] provide similar results using differential curvature flow when the curves and  
 201 surfaces are well-behaved. Later on Paterson proved the same result using a combinatorial algorithm [187]. None  
 202 of these algorithms provide any bound on the number of homotopy moves performed as a function of the number  
 203 of self-intersections. The monotonicity result, together with asymptotic bounds by Bender and Canfield [21] on  
 204 the number of distinct (rooted) 4-regular maps with  $n$  vertices and genus  $g$ , immediately implies an upper bound  
 205 of the form  $n^{O(g)} 2^{O(n)}$  on the number of homotopy moves required; this is the best upper bound previously known  
 206 before our work.

## 1.2 Electrical Transformations

Let's change our focus from curves to graphs for a moment. Consider the following set of local operations defined on *plane graphs* (that is, planar graphs with embeddings on some surface), called *electrical transformations* (following Colin de Verdière *et al.* [68]), consisting of six operations in three dual pairs, as shown in Figure 1.2.

- *degree-1 reduction*: Contract the edge incident to a vertex of degree 1, or delete the edge incident to a face of degree 1
- *series-parallel reduction*: Contract either edge incident to a vertex of degree 2, or delete either edge incident to a face of degree 2
- $\Delta Y$  *transformation*: Delete a vertex of degree 3 and connect its neighbors with three new edges, or delete the edges bounding a face of degree 3 and join the vertices of that face to a new vertex.



**Figure 1.2.** Facial electrical transformations in a plane graph  $G$  and its dual graph  $G^*$ .

It is natural to ask *how many* electrical transformations are required in the worst case. The earliest algorithm for reducing a plane graph to a single vertex again follows from Steinitz's proof of the convex polyhedron theorem [230, 231]. Later algorithms were given by Feo [99], Truemper [242], Feo and Provan [100], and others. Both Steinitz's algorithm and Feo and Provan's algorithm require at most  $O(n^2)$  electrical transformations. (We will soon discuss Steinitz's algorithm in Section 2.6, and then Feo and Provan's algorithm later in Section 8.1.1.)

Even the special case of regular grids is interesting. Truemper [242, 244] describes a reduction from the problem of reducing general plane graphs to regular grids using graph minors, and show how to reduce the  $p \times p$  grid in  $O(p^3)$  steps. Pogor and Sussmann [190] showed how to reduce the  $(p+q) \times q$  grid in  $O(pq^2 + q^3)$  steps. Nakahara and Takahashi [181] prove an upper bound of  $O(\min\{pq^2, p^2q\})$  for the  $p \times q$  cylindrical grid. Because every  $n$ -vertex plane graph is a minor of an  $O(n) \times O(n)$  grid [233, 249], all of these results imply an  $O(n^3)$  upper bound for arbitrary plane graphs (see Corollary 7.3). Both Gitler [115] and Feo and Provan [100] suspect the possibility that Truemper's algorithm actually performs only  $O(n^2)$  electrical transformations. On the other hand, the smallest (cylindrical) grid containing every  $n$ -vertex plane graph as a minor has size  $\Omega(n) \times \Omega(n)$  [249].

Most of these earlier algorithms actually solve a more difficult problem, considered by Akers [5] and Lehman [165], of reducing a planar graph with two special vertices called *terminals* to a single edge between the two. Epifanov [85] first proved that such reduction is always possible, using a nonconstructive argument; simpler constructive proofs were later given by Feo [99], Truemper [242, 244], Feo and Provan [100] (and Nakahara and Takahashi [181], whose algorithm is almost identical to Truemper's but performed on cylindrical grids instead). In fact, all existing algorithms that work for arbitrary plane graphs without terminals can be modified to work for the two-terminal case.

**Feo-Provan Conjecture.** Despite decades of prior work as we shown above, the complexity of the electrical reduction process is still poorly understood. Several authors have conjectured that the quadratic bound derived from Feo and Provan [100] can be improved. Without any restrictions on which transformations are permitted,

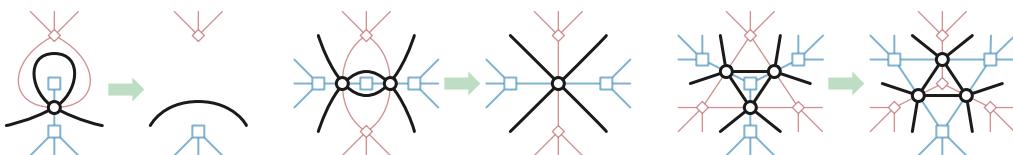
the only known lower bound is the trivial  $\Omega(n)$ . Gitler [115] and Archdeacon *et al.* [12] asked whether the  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound for square grids can be improved to near-linear. (We will show in Section 7.3.1 that turns out no improvements can be made.) As for arbitrary planar graphs, Feo and Provan [100] suggested that “there are compelling reasons to think that  $O(|V|^{3/2})$  is the smallest possible order”, possibly referring to earlier empirical results of Feo [99, Chapter 6]. Gitler [115] conjectured that a simple modification of Feo and Provan’s algorithm requires only  $O(n^{3/2})$  time.

### 1.3 Relation between Two Local Operations

Perhaps the most important and surprising connection we proposed in the thesis, is the existence of a quantitative relation between the electrical transformations and the homotopy moves. At the surface<sup>1</sup> such connection doesn’t seem to make sense; after all, electrical transformations are performed on (embedded) graphs, whereas homotopy moves are performed on curves. We argue that, at an intuitive level, reduction using electrical transformations should be thought of as a variant of the *monotonic* homotopy process, where all 0–2 moves are forbidden.

Connections between graphs and planar curves can be traced back to Tait [234], when he came up the notion later known as the “Tait graph”: Given a planar curve and the unique two-coloring of its regions in the plane, a graph can be constructed by taking one of the color classes as vertices, and two vertices are adjacent if the corresponding two regions share an intersection point of the curve. Notice that a Tait graph always comes with a planar embedding. The inverse operation to the Tait graph construction, now known as the *medial graph* construction, was discovered by Steinitz in his study of 3-dimensional convex polyhedron [230, 231], which he referred to as the “ $\Theta$ -Prozeß”. The medial graph  $G^\times$  of an embedded graph  $G$  is constructed by taking the edges of  $G$  as vertices and connect two edges of  $G$  (with multiplicity) if they share both a vertex and a face in  $G$ . Every vertex in the medial graph has degree 4, and therefore one can naturally view the medial graph as a system of curves lying on the same surface as  $G$ , where each intersection point between two (possibly identical) constituent curves is transverse. We refer to the set of curves as the *medial curves*.

Through the lens of the medial construction, electrical transformations in any embedded graph  $G$  correspond to local operations in the medial graph  $G^\times$  that bare extreme resemblance—perhaps almost identical to—homotopy moves. We refer to such local operations as *medial electrical moves*.



**Figure 1.3.** Electrical transformations and the corresponding medial electrical moves.

Now a natural bijection is established between graphs and systems of generic curves on a fixed surface; electrical transformations performed on the graph correspond to medial electrical moves performed on the medial curves. Many authors have observed and studied such correspondence, implicitly by Steinitz [230, 231] and Grünbaum [128], and explicitly by Yajima and Kinoshita [258], Goldman and Kauffman [117], and Nobel and Welsh [184].

The correspondence also provides another motivation to study electrical and homotopy moves on surfaces: When we perform electrical transformations on plane graphs, the terminals should not be involved in any local

<sup>1</sup>No pun intended.

operations. Under the medial graph construction, these terminals turn into punctures in the plane; no electrical moves will ever move the curves across a puncture. Therefore, by studying the relationship between electrical and homotopy moves on the punctured plane, we can bound the number of electrical transformations required to reduce plane graphs with terminals.

## 1.4 Results and Outline of the Thesis

The majority of the thesis is devoted to proving worst-case upper and lower bounds on the number of homotopy moves used for tightening curves and the number of electrical transformations required to reduce planar graphs.

We start with the preliminaries in Chapter 2, introducing the basic concepts used throughout the thesis and fixing the terminologies. Then in Chapter 3 we study the numerical curve invariant called *defect* introduced by Arnold [15, 16] and Aicardi [4]. Exact formulas of defect on specific families of curves are computed, along with several new properties of defect. The chapter finishes with some implications on *random knots*.

In Chapter 4 we derive lower bounds on the number of homotopy moves required to tighten curves on surfaces. We provide an  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  lower bound on tightening closed curves in the plane through the defect invariant. A natural generalization of defect to higher-genus surface gives a stronger  $\Omega(n^2)$  bound for non-contractible curves on arbitrary orientable surfaces. The same  $\Omega(n^2)$  bound can be proven and extended to arbitrary curves on any surface with non-positive Euler characteristic using a completely different potential function. In Chapter 5, a matching  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound for planar curves is obtained using the *useful cycle technique*; we then extend the algorithm to arbitrary collection of closed curves in the plane.

In Chapter 6 we describe two methods to tighten curves on an arbitrary orientable surface by adapting Steinitz's algorithm: First, we present an  $O((g + b)n^3)$ -step algorithm for tightening curves on an arbitrary orientable genus- $g$  surface with  $b > 0$  boundary components. Next, we present an  $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$ -step algorithm for tightening curves on an arbitrary orientable genus- $g$  surface without boundary. We conclude the chapter with a discussion on monotonicity of the homotopy process.

In Chapter 7 we study the quantitative relation between electrical transformations and monotonic homotopy moves. After a brief discussion on some subtlety in the definition of electrical transformations, we will formally discuss the comparison between the two sets of operations, supported by some natural conjectures strengthening the relationship between electrical moves and homotopy moves. Evidence towards the conjectures and proofs for the special cases are provided in subsequent subsections; in passing, we will make Truemper's minor lemma [242] quantitative. We then apply the theory developed in previous chapters and sections to derive lower bounds on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce planar graphs, with or without terminals. One of the major theorem we rely on, based on arguments of Truemper [242] and Noble and Welsh [184], is that reducing a *unicursal* plane graph  $G$ —one whose medial graph is the image of a single closed curve—using electrical transformations requires at least as many steps as reducing the medial graph of  $G$  to a simple closed curve using homotopy moves.

## 1.5 History and Related Work

**Applications of electrical transformations.** Electrical transformations have been used since the end of the 19th century [155, 212] to analyze resistor networks and other electrical circuits, but many other applications have been discovered since. Akers [5] used the same transformations to compute shortest paths and maximum

flows (see also Hobbs [141]). Lehman [165] used them to estimate network reliability; significant amount of work on such application follows [49, 131, 225, 240, 245] (see also [107, 129, 209, 210, 213, 224]). Further applications on solving combinatorial problems using electrical transformations have been found, including multicommodity flows [99]; counting spanning trees, perfect matchings, and cuts [33, 62]; evaluation of spin models in statistical mechanics [62, 146]; solving generalized Laplacian linear systems [127, 181]; kinematic analysis of robot manipulators [227]; flow estimation from noisy measurements [263]; constructing distance preservers [121]; and studying singularities in quantum field theory [200]. Lehman [164] gave a necessary condition on problems to which the electrical transformations applies. (See Chapter 7 and Appendix B of Gitler’s thesis [115] for some discussion.)

**Local operations related to homotopy moves.** Tight bounds are known for two special cases where some homotopy moves are forbidden. First, Nowik [185] proved a tight  $\Omega(n^2)$  lower bound for regular homotopy. Second, Khovanov [157] defined two curves to be *doodle equivalent* if one can be transformed into the other using  $1 \leftrightarrow 0$  and  $2 \leftrightarrow 0$  moves. Khovanov [157] and Ito and Takimura [144] independently proved that any planar curve can be transformed into its unique equivalent doodle with the smallest number of vertices, using only  $1 \rightarrow 0$  and  $2 \rightarrow 0$  moves. Thus, two doodle equivalent curves are connected by a sequence of  $O(n)$  moves, which is obviously tight. It is not known which sets of curves are equivalent under  $1 \leftrightarrow 0$  and  $3 \rightarrow 3$  moves; indeed, Hagge and Yazinski only recently proved that this equivalence is nontrivial [132]; see also related results of Ito *et al.* [144, 145]. Looser bounds are also known for the minimum number of Reidemeister moves needed to reduce a diagram of the unknot [134, 159], to separate the components of a split link [138], or to move between two equivalent knot diagrams [70, 137].

**Geometric intersection number.** The *geometric intersection number* of a closed curve  $\gamma$  on a surface is the number of self-intersections of a tightening of  $\gamma$ . Several methods for characterizing and computing geometric intersection numbers are known [52, 53, 61, 119, 172]; however, none of these earlier results offers a full complexity analysis. Arettines [13] described a polynomial-time algorithm to compute geometric intersection number of a curve on an orientable surface with boundary, starting from the reduced crossing sequence of the curve with a system of arcs (defined in Section 6.2.1). Despré and Lazarus [77] described the first fully-analyzed polynomial-time algorithm to compute the geometric intersection number of arbitrary closed curves on an arbitrary orientable surface. Both of these algorithms follow a high-level strategy similar to ours, based on Hass and Scott’s results about singular bigons, but neither algorithm computes an explicit sequence of homotopy moves. Instead, Arettines removes singular bigons by permuting their intersections along each arc, and Despré and Lazarus remove singular bigons by directly *smoothing* their endpoints. Further references can be found in Despré and Lazarus [77].

**Beyond 2-terminal planar graphs.** A vast amount of work has been done to extend the algorithms to planar graphs with more than two terminals. Gitler [115] and Gitler and Sagols [116] proved that any three-terminal planar graph can be reduced to a graph on the three terminals, confirming the speculation by Akers [5]. Pogor [189] provided an alternative and efficient algorithm to reduce any three-terminal planar graph using only  $O(n^2)$  steps. Archdeacon *et al.* [12] and Demasi and Mohar [76] characterized the four-terminal planar graphs that can be reduced to just four vertices. Gitler [68, 115] proved that for any integer  $k$ , any planar graph with  $k$  terminals on a common face can be reduced to a planar graph with  $O(k^2)$  vertices. Gitler’s results were significantly extended by Colin de Verdière *et al.* [66, 67, 68] and Curtis *et al.* [71, 72, 73] to the theory of circular planar networks; see also Postnikov [199] and Kenyon [156].

351      **$\Delta Y$ -reducible graphs.** Gitler [115] proved that every  $K_5$ -minor-free or  $K_{3,3}$ -minor-free graph can be reduced to a  
352 single vertex; Wagner [253] proved similar results for almost-planar graphs and almost-graphic matroids, building  
353 on earlier matroid results of Truemper [243]; Truemper [242, Lemma 4] and several others [12, 115, 181, 184]  
354 proved that the class of  $\Delta Y$ -reducible graphs is closed under minor; Archdeacon *et al.* [12] extended the result  
355 to the class of terminal-reducible graphs, and characterized the class of  $\Delta Y$ -reducible projective-planar graphs;  
356 Yu [259, 260] showed there are at least 68 billion forbidden minors obstructions for the class of  $\Delta Y$ -reducible  
357 graphs, falling into 20  $\Delta Y$ -equivalent classes.

358     The two obvious subclasses of  $\Delta Y$ -reducible graphs are the  $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ -reducible graphs and the  $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ -reducible  
359 graphs: graphs that are reducible under degree-1 reductions, series-parallel reductions, and exactly one of the  
360 two directions of  $\Delta Y$  transformation. These two classes of graphs are far more restrictive than the  $\Delta Y$ -reducible  
361 graphs; indeed, they are both subclasses of partial 4-trees [166]. The characterizations and recognition algorithms  
362 are known for both  $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ -reducible graphs [191, 192, 193] and  $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ -reducible graphs [14, 84, 194, 214].

363     **Algebraic structures for curves on surfaces.** The collection of multicurves forms a Lie bialgebra structure on  
364 the surface, first noticed by Goldman [118] and Turaev [247]. See Chas [50, 51] for a modern treatment of the  
365 topic. The electrical moves performed on curves is similar to the operation of the 0-Hecke monoid of the symmetric  
366 groups (also known as the Richardson–Springer monoid) [237], which can be viewed as electrical moves on flat  
367 braids. The main technical lemma in the monotonic tightening process for arbitrary annular curves of de Graaf  
368 and Schrijver [125, Theorem 4] can be extended to Weyl groups and more generally to Coxeter groups [110].

## 369     1.6 Acknowledgment

370     A major part of the thesis is based on (and extended from) the joint work [43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48] with the following  
371 colleagues: Jeff Erickson, David Letscher, Arnaud de Mesmay, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan Thurston, and  
372 Stephan Tillmann. The author is extremely grateful for the opportunity to work with them.

373     Sections 3.1, 6.3, 6.4, and 7.2 contain results that are either new, or have been improved from the corresponding  
374 versions in our earlier publications. Some of the other results in the thesis have also been rewritten to make the  
375 terminology and presentation consistent.



# Chapter 2

## Preliminaries

376

*I don't like to define my music. To me, music is pure emotion. It's language that can communicate certain emotions and the rhythms cuts across genders, cultures and nationalities. All you need to do is close your eyes and feel those emotions.*

— Yanni

377

*I respectfully disagree.*

— Laurel

378

We assume the readers are familiar with basic terminologies and definitions in graph theory and topology. We refer the interested readers to the following references. For basic graph theory, see Diestel [80] and West [254]. For topology and manifolds, see Massey [176] and Lee [163]. For topological graph theory, see Mohar-Thomassen [179] and Lando-Zvonkin [160]. For combinatorial topology, see Stillwell [232].

382

### 2.1 Surfaces

383

Intuitively speaking, a **2-dimensional manifold with boundary** is a topological space where locally the neighborhood of any point in the interior of the space looks like an Euclidean plane, the neighborhood of any point on the boundary of the space looks like an Euclidean half-plane. A **surface**  $\Sigma$  is a 2-dimensional manifold, possibly with boundary. All surfaces are assumed to be connected unless stated otherwise. Every point  $x \in \Sigma$  lies in an open neighborhood that is either homeomorphic to the plane  $\mathbb{R}^2$  or homeomorphic to an open half-plane with  $x$  on its boundary. The points with half-plane neighborhoods form the **boundary** of  $\Sigma$ ; the **interior** of  $\Sigma$  is the complement of its boundary.

390

The **genus** of an orientable surface is intuitively the number of *holes* the surface has. The **Euler characteristic**  $\chi(\Sigma)$  of a genus- $g$  orientable surface  $\Sigma$  with  $b$  boundary components is equal to  $2 - 2g - b$ . Except for a few places (which we will mention explicitly), all the surfaces in the thesis are **orientable**, which means that there is a consistent choice of the normal vectors everywhere on the surface. In other words, locally on the surface, words like “clockwise”, “counter-clockwise”, “left”, and “right” are all well-defined. One of the most fundamental results in combinatorial topology is that all surfaces can be classified by their *genus*, *number of boundary components*, and *orientability* [25, 81, 106, 148, 177, 220]. (For an extended survey on the history, see Gallier and Xu [108].)

397

### 2.2 Curves and Graphs on Surfaces

398

#### 2.2.1 Curves

399

Formally, a **closed curve** or a **circle** in a surface  $\Sigma$  is a continuous map  $\gamma$  from 1-dimensional circle  $S^1$  to  $\Sigma$ , and a **path** in  $\Sigma$  is a continuous map  $\eta: [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ . Depending on the context, we sometimes abuse the terminology

401 and refer to a continuous map  $\eta: (0, 1) \rightarrow \Sigma$  as a *path* as well. We call the two points  $\eta(0)$  and  $\eta(1)$  as *endpoints*  
 402 of  $\eta$ . A *curve* is either a closed curve or a path; its parametrization equips the curve with an orientation. We  
 403 sometimes say the curve is *directed* when we want to emphasize its orientation. A curve is *simple* if it is injective.  
 404 A *subpath* of a curve  $\gamma$  is the restriction of  $\gamma$  to an interval; again, a subpath is simple if the restriction is injective.  
 405 We consider only *generic* curves, which are injective except at a finite number of self-intersections, each of which  
 406 is a transverse double point (which means, no more than two subpaths intersect at the same point, and the tangent  
 407 vectors are not a multiple of the other's). The double points avoid the boundary of  $\Sigma$ . (Some authors preferred the  
 408 term *normal* [104, 105, 238, 257] or *stable* [186].) Unless specified otherwise, we do not distinguish between the  
 409 function  $\gamma$  and its image. Sometimes we refer to closed curves in the plane as *planar curves* and closed curves in  
 410 the annulus as *annular curves*.

## 411 2.2.2 Graphs and Their Embeddings

412 A *graph* consists of some 0-dimensional points called *vertices* and a multiset containing pairs of vertices called  
 413 *edges*. An *embedding* of a graph  $G$  into a surface  $\Sigma$  maps the vertices of  $G$  to distinct points and the edges of  $G$   
 414 to simple interior-disjoint paths between those points. The *faces* of an embedding are the components of the  
 415 complement of its image in  $\Sigma$ . We sometimes refer to graphs with embeddings as *maps*. An embedding is *cellular*  
 416 if every face is homeomorphic to an open disk. Any cellular embedding of  $G$  into an *orientable* surface can be  
 417 encoded combinatorially by its *rotation system*, which records the counterclockwise order of edges incident to  
 418 each vertex of  $G$ . Two cellular embeddings of  $G$  are homeomorphic if and only if they have the same rotation  
 419 system, up to reflections of the surface. An *embedded graph* is a graph  $G$  together with a cellular embedding of  $G$   
 420 into some surface  $\Sigma$ . A *plane graph* is a planar graph with some given cellular embedding in the plane.

421 The *dual* of a cellularly embedded graph  $G$  is another cellularly embedded graph  $G^*$  on the same surface,  
 422 whose vertices, edges, and faces correspond to the faces, edges, and vertices of  $G$ , respectively. Specifically, the  
 423 dual graph  $G^*$  has a vertex  $f^*$  for every face  $f$  of  $G$ , and two vertices of  $G^*$  are connected by an edge if and only if  
 424 the corresponding faces of  $G$  are separated by an edge. The dual graph  $G^*$  inherits a cellular embedding into  $\Sigma$   
 425 from the embedding of  $G$ . The dual of the dual of a cellularly embedded graph  $G$  is (homeomorphic to) the  
 426 original embedded graph  $G$ .

427 Let  $G$  be a graph cellularly embedded on surface  $\Sigma$ ; each face of  $G$  being a disk implies that graph  $G$  must be  
 428 connected. *Euler's formula* states that

$$429 n_v - n_e + n_f = \chi(\Sigma),$$

430 where  $n_v$  is the number of vertices,  $n_e$  is the number of edges, and  $n_f$  is the number of faces of  $G$ , respectively. In  
 431 particular, any plane graph  $G$  has its number of vertices plus number of faces equals to its number of edges plus 2.

## 432 2.2.3 Curves as 4-regular Maps

433 The image of any non-simple closed curve  $\gamma$  has a natural structure as a 4-regular map, whose *vertices* are the  
 434 self-intersections of  $\gamma$ , *edges* are maximal subpaths between vertices, and *faces* are components of  $\Sigma \setminus \gamma$ . We  
 435 emphasize that the faces of  $\gamma$  are not necessarily disks. Every vertex  $x$  of  $\gamma$  has four *corners* adjacent to it; these  
 436 are the four components of  $D_x \setminus \gamma$  where  $D_x$  is a small disk neighborhood of  $x$ . Two curves  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  are *isomorphic*  
 437 if their images define combinatorially equivalent maps; we will not distinguish between isomorphic curves.

#### 438 2.2.4 Jordan Curve Theorem

439 Given a *simple* closed curve  $\sigma$  on the sphere, the classical *Jordan-Schönflies theorem* [149, 150, 215, 250] states  
440 that  $\sigma$  separates the sphere into exactly two connected components, each of which is simply-connected. The  
441 weaker result, without the simply-connectedness conclusion, is often known as the *Jordan curve theorem*. After  
442 projecting the curve  $\sigma$  into the plane, we refer to the two components of the complement of  $\sigma$  as the *interior* and  
443 the *exterior* of  $\sigma$ , depending on whether the component is bounded or not. Jordan-Schönflies theorem forms the  
444 basis of most of the arguments in the thesis. We will use the result implicitly without referring to its name. (A  
445 curious and tangled history regarding the proof(s) of the Jordan curve theorem(s) can be found in Jeff Erickson's  
446 notes on computational topology [88, Note 1].)

#### 447 2.2.5 Multicurves

448 A *multicurve* on surface  $\Sigma$  is a collection of one or more closed curves in  $\Sigma$ ; in particular, a *k-curve* is a collection  
449 of  $k$  circles. A multicurve is *simple* if it is injective, or equivalently, if it consists of pairwise disjoint simple closed  
450 curves. Again we only consider *generic* multicurves. The image of any multicurve is the disjoint union of simple  
451 closed curves and 4-regular maps. A *component* of a multicurve  $\gamma$  is any multicurve whose image is a connected  
452 component of the image of  $\gamma$ . We call the individual closed curves that comprise a multicurve its *constituent*  
453 *curves*; see Figure 2.1. Most of the definitions on curves can be extended properly to multicurves.

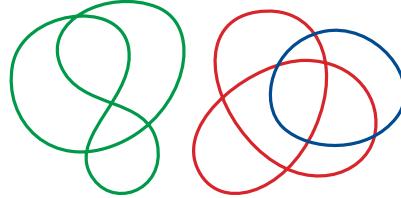


Figure 2.1. A multicurve with two components and three constituent curves, one of which is simple.

#### 454 2.2.6 Tangles

455 A *tangle*  $\Theta^1$  is a collection of boundary-to-boundary paths  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$  in a closed topological disk  $\Sigma$ , which (self-  
456 )intersect only pairwise, transversely, and away from the boundary of  $\Sigma$ . This terminology is borrowed from knot  
457 theory, where a tangle usually refers to the intersection of a knot or link with a closed 3-dimensional ball [57, 69];  
458 our tangles are perhaps more properly called *flat tangles*, as they are images of tangles under appropriate projection.  
459 (Our tangles are unrelated to the obstructions to small branchwidth introduced by Robertson and Seymour [206].)  
460 Transforming a curve into a tangle is identical to (an inversion of) the *flarb* operation defined by Allen *et al.* [8].

461 We call each individual path  $\gamma_i$  a *strand* of the tangle. The *boundary* of a tangle  $\Theta$  is the boundary of the  
462 disk  $\Sigma$  that defines  $\Theta$ ; we usually denote the boundary by  $\sigma$ . By the Jordan-Schönflies theorem, we can assume  
463 without loss of generality that  $\sigma$  is actually a Euclidean circle. We can obtain a tangle from any closed curve  $\gamma$  by  
464 considering its restriction to any closed disk whose boundary  $\sigma$  intersects  $\gamma$  transversely away from its vertices;  
465 we call this restriction the *interior tangle* of  $\sigma$ .

466 The strands and boundary of any tangle define a plane graph whose boundary vertices each have degree 3 and  
467 whose interior vertices each have degree 4.

<sup>1</sup>Pronounced “Terra”.

## 468 2.3 Homotopy

469 A **homotopy** between two closed curves  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  on the same surface  $\Sigma$  is a continuous deformation from one curve  
470 to the other. Formally this is a continuous map  $H: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$  such that  $H(\cdot, 0) = \gamma$  and  $H(\cdot, 1) = \gamma'$ . Similarly,  
471 a **homotopy** between two paths  $\eta$  and  $\eta'$  is a continuous deformation that keeps the endpoints fixed. Formally  
472 this is a continuous map  $H: [0, 1] \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$  such that  $H(\cdot, 0) = \eta$ , and  $H(\cdot, 1) = \eta'$ , and both  $H(0, \cdot)$  and  $H(1, \cdot)$   
473 are constant functions. Two curves are **homotopic**, or in the same **homotopy class**, if there is a homotopy from  
474 one to the other. A closed curve  $\gamma$  is **contractible** if it is homotopic to a constant curve; intuitively, this says that  
475  $\gamma$  can be continuously contracted to a single point. Otherwise we say  $\gamma$  is **non-contractible**. The definition of  
476 homotopy extends naturally to multicurves.

477 A multicurve  $\gamma$  on a surface  $\Sigma$  can be **tightened** via homotopy to another multicurve  $\gamma'$  with minimum number  
478 of self-intersections. A multicurve is **homotopically tight** (**h-tight** for short) if no homotopy leads to a multicurve  
479 with fewer vertices. As any contractible curve  $\gamma$  can be made simple through homotopy [135], we sometimes refer  
480 to the tightening process of a contractible curve  $\gamma$  as **simplifying**  $\gamma$ .

481 Similarly, a tangle is **tight** if no homotopy of the strands leads to another tangle with fewer vertices, or **loose**  
482 otherwise.

### 483 2.3.1 Covering Spaces and Fundamental Groups

484 A surface  $\tilde{\Sigma}$  is a **covering space** of another surface  $\Sigma$  if there is a **covering map** from  $\tilde{\Sigma}$  to  $\Sigma$ ; that is, a continuous  
485 map  $\pi: \tilde{\Sigma} \rightarrow \Sigma$  so that each point  $x$  on  $\Sigma$  has a neighborhood  $U \subseteq \Sigma$  so that  $\pi^{-1}(U)$  is a union of disjoint open sets  
486  $U_1 \cup U_2 \cup \dots$ , and, for any  $i$ , the restriction  $\pi|_{U_i}: U_i \rightarrow U$  is a homeomorphism. The **universal covering space**  $\hat{\Sigma}$   
487 (or **universal cover** for short) is the unique simply-connected covering space of  $\Sigma$ .

488 The **fundamental group**  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  of a surface  $\Sigma$  consists of all equivalence classes of closed curves passing  
489 through an arbitrary fixed basepoint on  $\Sigma$  up to homotopy, where the group operation comes from concatenating  
490 two curves at the fixed point. (For any path-connected space like surfaces, the result is independent to the choice  
491 of the basepoint up to isomorphism.)

492 There is a one-to-one correspondence between subgroups of  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  and covering spaces of  $\Sigma$ . To be precise,  
493 given any subgroup  $\Gamma$  of  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$ , each element  $\alpha$  in group  $\Gamma$  acts on the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$  by moving the points  
494 according to the path that projects to the closed curve in  $\Sigma$  representing the element  $\alpha$ . one can construct covering  
495 space  $\tilde{\Sigma}_\Gamma$  of  $\Sigma$  as the **quotient space**  $\hat{\Sigma}/\Gamma$ , by identifying all the points in the same orbit under the action of  $\Gamma$  on the  
496 universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . For example, the trivial subgroup of  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  corresponds exactly to the universal cover of  $\Sigma$ .

### 497 2.3.2 Lifting

498 Let  $\Sigma$  be a surface and  $\tilde{\Sigma}$  be a covering space of  $\Sigma$  with covering map  $\pi$ . A **lift** of a path  $\eta$  in  $\Sigma$  to  $\tilde{\Sigma}$  is a path  $\tilde{\eta}$  in  $\tilde{\Sigma}$   
499 such that  $\eta = \pi \circ \tilde{\eta}$ . A **lift** of a closed curve  $\gamma$  in  $\Sigma$  to  $\tilde{\Sigma}$  is an infinite path  $\tilde{\gamma}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \tilde{\Sigma}$  such that  $\gamma(t \bmod 1) = \pi(\tilde{\gamma}(t))$ .  
500 We sometimes view the closed curve  $\gamma$  as a path  $\gamma_x$  starting and ending at the same point  $x$  in  $\Sigma$ , and therefore  
501 abuse the terminology and refer to the lift of the path  $\gamma_x$  as **lift** of  $\gamma$  (at basepoint  $x$ ) instead. Observe that the lift  
502 of  $\gamma$  at basepoint  $x$  is always a subpath of the lift of  $\gamma$ . A **translate** of a lift  $\tilde{\alpha}$  is any other lift of  $\alpha$  to the same  
503 covering space; equivalently, two paths  $\tilde{\alpha}, \tilde{\beta}: [0, 1] \rightarrow \tilde{\Sigma}$  are translates of each other if and only if  $\pi \circ \tilde{\alpha} = \pi \circ \tilde{\beta}$ .

504 The **homotopy lifting property** guarantees that any homotopy  $H$  from a curve  $\gamma$  to another curve  $\gamma'$  on  $\Sigma$  lifts  
505 to a homotopy  $\tilde{H}$  from  $\tilde{\gamma}$  to  $\tilde{\gamma}'$  on the covering space  $\tilde{\Sigma}$ . If we decompose the homotopies  $H$  and  $\tilde{H}$  into homotopy

506 moves, any homotopy move in  $\tilde{H}$  corresponds to a homotopy move in  $H$  by projection; however there might be  
 507 additional homotopy moves in  $H$  where the strands involved are projected from different parts of the lift on  $\tilde{\Sigma}$ .

## 508 2.4 Combinatorial Properties of Curves

### 509 2.4.1 Monogons and Bigons

510 A **monogon** in a closed curve  $\gamma$  on surface  $\Sigma$  is a subpath of  $\gamma$  that begins and ends at some vertex  $x$ , intersects  
 511 itself only at  $x$ , and bounds a disk in  $\Sigma$  containing exactly one of the four corners at  $x$ . A **bigon** in  $\gamma$  consists of  
 512 two simple interior-disjoint subpaths of  $\gamma$ , sharing endpoints  $x$  and  $y$ , that together bound a disk in  $\Sigma$  containing  
 513 exactly one corner at  $x$  and one at  $y$ . Since each subpath is simple, the vertices  $x$  and  $y$  are distinct.

514 We sometimes refer to the interior tangle of the boundary curve of the disk corresponding to the monogon  
 515 (respectively, the bigon) as the *interior tangle* of the monogon (respectively, the bigon). A monogon or bigon is  
 516 **empty** if its interior bigon does not intersect the rest of  $\gamma$ . A bigon  $\beta$  is **minimal** if its interior tangle  $\oplus$  does not  
 517 contain a smaller bigon, and no strand of  $\oplus$  forms a bigon with  $\beta$  by intersecting either bounding path of  $\beta$  more  
 518 than once.

### 519 2.4.2 Homotopy Moves

520 Consider the following set of local operations performed on any generic curve: **1→0 move** removes an *empty* mono-  
 521 gon, **2→0 move** removes an *empty* bigon, and **3→3 move** moves a subpath across a self-intersection. Collectively  
 522 we call them (and their inverses) **homotopy moves**.<sup>2</sup>

523 Each homotopy move can be executed by a homotopy inside an open disk embedded in  $\Sigma$ , meeting  $\gamma$  as  
 524 shown in Figure 1.1. Conversely, Alexander's simplicial approximation theorem [6], together with combinatorial  
 525 arguments of Alexander and Briggs [7] and Reidemeister [202], imply that any generic homotopy between two  
 526 closed curves can be decomposed into a finite sequence of homotopy moves. The definition of homotopy and the  
 527 decomposition of homotopies into homotopy moves extend naturally to multicurves and tangles.

### 528 2.4.3 Signs and Winding Numbers

529 We adopt a standard sign convention for vertices first used by Gauss [109]. Choose an arbitrary basepoint  $\gamma(0)$   
 530 and orientation for the curve. For each vertex  $x$ , we define  $\text{sgn}(x) = +1$  if the first traversal through the vertex  
 531 crosses the second traversal from right to left, and  $\text{sgn}(x) = -1$  otherwise. See Figure 2.2.

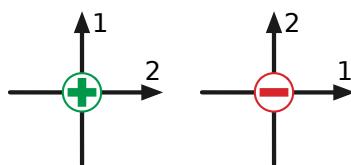


Figure 2.2. Gauss's sign convention.

<sup>2</sup>Unlike the situation for Reidemeister moves on knots, there is no consistent naming for these local operations. Others called them Titus moves [104, 105]; shadow moves [246, 248]; perestroikas [15, 16]; Reidemeister-type moves [125, 196]; elementary moves [187]; basic moves [185]; and so on. Here we attempt to resolve the situation once and for all by proposing yet another name.

Let  $\gamma$  be a generic closed curve in the plane, and let  $p$  be any point not in the image of  $\gamma$ . Let  $\rho$  be any ray from  $p$  to infinity that intersects  $\gamma$  transversely. The **winding number**  $\text{wind}(\gamma, p)$  is the number of times  $\gamma$  crosses  $\rho$  from right to left, minus the number of times  $\gamma$  crosses  $\rho$  from left to right. The winding number does not depend on the particular choice of ray  $\rho$ . All points in the same face of  $\gamma$  have the same winding number; the winding numbers of two adjacent faces differ by 1, with the higher winding number on the left side of the edge. If  $p$  lies on the curve  $\gamma$ , we define  $\text{wind}(\gamma, p)$  to be the average of the winding numbers of the faces incident to  $p$  with appropriate multiplicity—two faces if  $p$  lies on an edge, four if  $p$  is a vertex. The winding number of a vertex is always an integer.

The **winding number** of a directed closed curve  $\gamma$  in the annulus is the number of times any generic path  $\rho$  from one fixed boundary component to the other crosses  $\gamma$  from left to right, minus the number of times  $\rho$  crosses  $\gamma$  from right to left. Two directed closed curves in the annulus are homotopic if and only if their winding numbers are equal [142].

## 2.5 Relating Graphs to Curves

### 2.5.1 Medial Construction

The **medial graph** of a graph  $G$  embedded on surface  $\Sigma$ , which we denote  $G^\times$ , is another graph embedded on the same surface whose vertices correspond to the edges of  $G$  and whose edges correspond to incidences (with multiplicity) between vertices of  $G$  and faces of  $G$ . Two vertices of  $G^\times$  are connected by an edge if and only if the corresponding edges in  $G$  are consecutive in cyclic order around some vertex, or equivalently, around some face in  $G$ . Every vertex in every medial graph has degree 4; thus, every medial graph is the image of a multicurve. Conversely, the image of every non-simple multicurve is the medial graph of some embedded graph on  $\Sigma$ . The medial graphs of any cellularly embedded graph  $G$  and its dual  $G^*$  are identical. To avoid trivial boundary cases, we define the medial graph of an isolated vertex to be a circle. We call an embedded graph  $G$  **unicursal** if its medial graph  $G^\times$  is the image of a single closed curve.

The medial graph  $G^\times$  of any 2-terminal plane graph  $G$  is properly considered as a multicurve in the annulus; the faces of  $G^\times$  that correspond to the terminals are removed from the surface. In general, medial graph  $G^\times$  of any  $k$ -terminal graph  $G$  embedded on surface  $\Sigma$  can be viewed as a multicurve on  $\Sigma$  with all faces of  $G^\times$  representing terminals of  $G$  being removed.

### 2.5.2 Facial Electrical Moves

The **facial electrical transformations** consist of six operations in three dual pairs: **degree-1 reduction**, **series-parallel reduction**, and  **$\Delta Y$  transformation**, as shown in Figure 1.2. (In Chapter 1 we simply called them **electrical transformations**; from this point on throughout the rest of the thesis, we reserve that name for the general set of transformations performed on arbitrary graphs without embeddings.) Facial electrical transformations on any graph  $G$  embedded in surface  $\Sigma$  correspond to local operations in the medial graph  $G^\times$  on the same surface that closely resemble homotopy moves. Each degree-1 reduction in  $G$  corresponds to a  $1 \rightarrow 0$  move in  $G^\times$ , and each  $\Delta Y$  transformation in  $G$  corresponds to a  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move in  $G^\times$ . A series-parallel reduction in  $G$  contracts an empty bigon in  $G^\times$  to a single vertex. Extending our earlier notation, we call this operation a  **$2 \rightarrow 1$  move**. We collectively refer to these operations and their inverses as **medial electrical moves**; see Figure 1.3.

A multicurve is **electrically tight** (**e-tight** for short), if no sequence of medial electrical moves leads to another

multicurve with fewer vertices. We use the terminology “tight” for both electrical and homotopic reductions. This is not a coincidence; we will justify its usage in Section 7.2.4.

### 2.5.3 Depths of Planar and Annular Multicurves

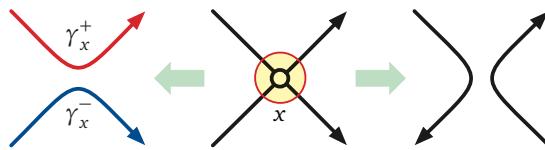
For any planar multicurve  $\gamma$  and any point  $p$  in the plane, let  $\text{depth}(p, \gamma)$  denote the minimum number of times a path from  $p$  to infinity crosses  $\gamma$ . Any two points in the same face of  $\gamma$  have the same depth, so each face  $f$  has a well-defined depth, which is its distance to the outer face in the dual graph of  $\gamma$ ; see Figure 5.1. The depth of the multicurve, denoted  $\text{depth}(\gamma)$ , is the maximum depth of the faces of  $\gamma$ ; and the **depth-sum potential**  $D\Sigma(\gamma)$  (or just **potential**) is the sum of depths of all the faces of  $\gamma$ . Euler’s formula implies that any 4-regular plane graph with  $n$  vertices has exactly  $n+2$  faces; thus, for any multicurve  $\gamma$  with  $n$  vertices, we have  $n+1 \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) \leq (n+1) \cdot \text{depth}(\gamma)$ .

Depths and potential of a tangle  $\Theta$  are defined exactly the same as for planar curves: The depth of any face  $f$  of  $\Theta$  is its distance to the outer face in the dual graph  $\Theta^*$ ; the depth of the tangle is its maximum face depth; and the potential  $D\Sigma(\Theta)$  of the tangle is the sum of all face depths.

The **depth** of any multicurve  $\gamma$  in the annulus is the minimum number of times a path from one boundary to the other crosses  $\gamma$ . Notice how this definition differs from the one for planar multicurves. If we embed the annulus in the punctured plane  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus o$ , the depth of the annular multicurve  $\gamma$  is in fact equivalent to  $\text{depth}(o, \gamma)$ . Just as the winding number around the boundaries is a complete homotopy invariant for annular curves, the depth turns out to be a complete invariant for facial electrical moves on annular multicurves. (See Section 7.2.3.) By definition the inequality  $|\text{wind}(\gamma, o)| \leq \text{depth}(o, \gamma)$  holds.

### 2.5.4 Smoothing

Suppose that  $\gamma$  is a generic closed curve and  $x$  is a vertex of  $\gamma$ . Let  $D_x$  be a small disk neighborhood of  $x$ . Then we may **smooth** the curve  $\gamma$  at  $x$  by removing  $\gamma \cap D_x$  from  $\gamma$  and adding in two components of  $\partial D_x \setminus \gamma$  to obtain another 4-regular map. Following Giller [113, 143], we refer to the resulting curve as a **smoothing** of  $\gamma$ .<sup>3</sup> There are two types of smoothings. One results in another closed curve, with the orientation of one subpath of  $\gamma$  reversed; the other breaks  $\gamma$  into a pair of closed curves, each retaining its original orientation. In the latter smoothing, let  $\gamma_x^+$  and  $\gamma_x^-$  respectively denote the closed curve locally to the left and to the right of  $x$ , as shown in Figure 2.3. For any vertex  $x$  and any other point  $p$ , we have  $\text{wind}(\gamma, p) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x^+, p) + \text{wind}(\gamma_x^-, p)$ . More generally, a **smoothing** of a multicurve  $\gamma$  is any multicurve obtained by smoothing a subset of its vertices. For any embedded graph  $G$ , the smoothings of the medial graph  $G^\times$  are precisely the medial graphs of minors of  $G$ .



**Figure 2.3.** Smoothing a vertex. The left smoothing preserves orientation; the right smoothing preserves connectivity.

<sup>3</sup>The same operation is also known as a *split* or *splice* [152, 153]; an *opening* [219]; a *resolution* [170, 171]; or a *cut-and-paste* [182]. The word *smoothing* was later on picked up by Jones [147] and Kauffman [154].

## 598 2.6 Tightening Curves via Bigon Removal

599 As mentioned in the introduction, an algorithm to simplify any planar closed curve using at most  $O(n^2)$  homotopy  
600 moves is implicit in Steinitz's proof that every 3-connected planar graph is the 1-skeleton of a convex polyhedron  
601 [230, 231]. Specifically, Steinitz proved that any non-simple planar multicurve or any loose tangle with no empty  
602 monogons contains a bigon. (It follows that a tangle is tight if every strand does not self-intersect, and every pair  
603 of strands intersects at most once.) Steinitz then proved that any *minimal* bigon with no empty monogons can be  
604 transformed into an empty bigon using a sequence of 3→3 moves, each removing one triangular face from the  
605 bigon. For the sake of completeness, we provide a succinct proof to the latter result here.

606 **Lemma 2.1.** *A minimal bigon that contains no empty monogons must have an empty triangle incident to either  
607 of the two bounding curves of the bigon; therefore such bigon can always be transformed into an empty bigon  
608 using a sequence of 3→3 moves.*

609 **Proof:** Let  $\Theta$  be the interior tangle of the bigon. First we prove that all the strands of  $\Theta$  are simple. Assume for  
610 contradiction that there is an inclusion-wise minimal monogon  $\sigma$  formed by some strand of  $\Theta$ ; let's call the interior  
611 tangle of  $\sigma$  as  $\Theta_\sigma$ . Now all the strands of  $\Theta_\sigma$  must be simple. However because  $\sigma$  is not empty, any strand of  $\Theta_\sigma$   
612 forms a bigon with  $\sigma$ , contradicting to the fact that the bigon itself is minimal.

613 Each pair of strands of  $\Theta$  intersects at most once. Fixing one of the two curves  $\lambda$  forming the bigon, every  
614 vertex  $v$  inside the bigon (as the intersection point of two strands  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ) defines a closed region  $R_v$  formed  
615 by  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\lambda$ . Now we argue the following: Any vertex  $v$  with inclusion-wise minimal  $R_v$  such that  $v$  has a  
616 neighbor  $w$  on  $\lambda$  (when viewed as a graph) must contain no other vertices besides  $v$  and the two intersections  
617  $(\alpha \cup \beta) \cap \lambda$ . Assume for the contrary, without loss of generality that the neighbor  $w$  of  $v$  on  $\lambda$  is  $\alpha \cap \lambda$ . Consider  
618 the vertex  $y$  on  $\beta$  that is adjacent to  $z := \beta \cap \lambda$ ; by our assumption  $y$  is not equal to  $v$ . Denote the other curve  
619 that intersects  $y$  as  $\gamma$ ; by the above paragraph  $\beta$  does not self-intersect and thus  $\gamma \neq \beta$ . It is not hard to see now  
620 that  $R_y$  is contained in  $R_v$ , because  $\gamma$  must intersect  $\lambda$  on the subpath of  $\lambda$  between  $w$  and  $z$  as  $\beta$  and  $\gamma$  intersect  
621 at most once. This contradicts to the fact that  $R_v$  is inclusion-wise minimal. Therefore, there is an empty triangle  
622 incident to  $\lambda$ , and one 3→3 move will remove  $v$  from the bigon.

623 Recursively remove vertices from the bigon; the procedure will only stop when there are no vertices left. At  
624 this point all strands of  $\Theta$  are simple and disjoint from each other; one can apply a sequence of 3→3 moves to  
625 remove all strands from  $\Theta$ , and thus making the bigon empty.  $\square$

626 Once the bigon is empty, it can be deleted with a single 2→0 or 2→1 move. Grünbaum [128] describes  
627 Steinitz's proof in more detail; indeed, Steinitz's proof is often incorrectly attributed to Grünbaum. See Gilmer and  
628 Litherland [114], Hass and Scott [136], Colin de Verdière *et al.* [68], or Nowik [185] for more modern treatments  
629 of Steinitz's technique.

630 Removing all the vertices inside the bigon takes as many 1→0 and 3→3 moves as the number of vertices,  
631 followed by another sequence of 3→3 moves that empties the bigon. This implies the following lemma, which will  
632 always be referred to as *Steinitz's bigon removal algorithm*:

633 **Lemma 2.2.** *Any minimal bigon whose interior tangle contains  $n$  vertices and  $s$  strands can be removed using  
634  $(n + s)$  1→0 and 3→3 moves followed by a single 2→0 or 2→1 move.*

# Chapter 3

## Curve Invariant — Defect

635

*Porque una parte importante de la relación amorosa, se juega en esta posibilidad de reconocer los defectos del otro y preguntarse, sinceramente, si se puede ser feliz a pesar de ellos.*

— Gabriel Rolón, *Historias de diván: ocho relatos de vida*

636 We consider a numerical invariant<sup>1</sup> of closed curves in the plane introduced by Arnold [15, 16] and Aicardi [4]  
637 called **defect**. (We will only focus on planar curves in this chapter; later on we will discuss how to define defect  
638 invariant on higher genus surfaces in Section 4.2.) There are several equivalent definitions and closed-form  
639 formulas for defect and other closely related curve invariants [11, 56, 167, 169, 196, 222, 223, 252]; Polyak [195]  
640 proved that defect can be computed—or for our purposes, defined—as follows:

641 
$$\text{defect}(\gamma) := -2 \sum_{x \between y} \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y).$$

642 Here the sum is taken over all *interleaved* pairs of vertices of  $\gamma$ : two vertices  $x \neq y$  are *interleaved*, denoted  $x \between y$ ,  
643 if they alternate in cyclic order— $x, y, x, y$ —along  $\gamma$ . (The factor of  $-2$  is a historical artifact, which we retain only  
644 to be consistent with Arnold’s original definitions [15, 16].) Even though the signs of individual vertices depend  
645 on the basepoint and orientation of the curve, the defect of a curve is independent of those choices. Moreover,  
646 the defect of any curve is preserved by any homeomorphism from the plane (or the sphere) to itself, including  
647 reflection. Trivially, every simple closed curve has defect zero.

648 Arnold [15, 16] originally defined two related first-order curve invariants  $St$  (“strangeness”) and  $J^+$  by their  
649 changes under  $2 \rightarrow 0$  and  $3 \rightarrow 3$  moves, without giving explicit formulas. Aicardi [4] proved that the linear combination  
650  $2St + J^+$  is unchanged under  $1 \rightarrow 0$  moves; Arnold dubbed this linear combination the “defect” of the curve [16].  
651 Aicardi also described  $n$ -vertex curves with strangeness  $-\lfloor n(n-1)/6 \rfloor$  and  $n(n+1)/2$  for all  $n$ ; Shumakovitch [222,  
652 223] later proved that all  $n$ -vertex curves have strangeness between these two extremes. (Nowik’s  $\Omega(n^2)$  lower  
653 bound for regular homotopy moves [185] follows immediately from Aicardi’s analysis.) However, the curves with  
654 extremal strangeness actually have defect zero.

655 In Section 3.1, we compute the defect of the standard planar projection of any  $p \times q$  torus knot where either  
656  $p \bmod q = 1$  or  $q \bmod p = 1$ , generalizing earlier results of Hayashi *et al.* [137, 139] and Even-Zohar *et al.* [95]. In  
657 particular, we show that the standard projection of the  $p \times (p+1)$  torus knot, which has  $p^2 - 1$  vertices, has defect  
658  $2 \binom{p+1}{3}$ .

659 Next, in Section 3.2, we prove that the defect of any generic closed curve  $\gamma$  with  $n$  vertices has absolute value  
660 at most  $O(n^{3/2})$ . Unlike most  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bounds involving planar graphs, our proof does *not* use the planar  
661 separator theorem [168]. First we prove that if the depth of the curve is  $\Omega(\sqrt{n})$ , there is a simple closed curve  $\sigma$

<sup>1</sup>Here the invariance is maintained under curve *isotopy*, which preserves the combinatorial structure of the curve. For our purpose (and convention in computer science) it would be better suited to refer to it as a *potential function*.

662 that contains at least  $s^2$  vertices of  $\gamma$ , where  $s$  is the number of strands in the interior tangle of  $\sigma$ . We establish an  
 663 inclusion-exclusion relationship between the defects of the given curve  $\gamma$ , the curves obtained by tightening  $\gamma$   
 664 either inside or outside  $\sigma$ , and the curve obtained by tightening  $\gamma$  on both sides of  $\sigma$ . This relationship implies an  
 665 unbalanced “divide-and-conquer” recurrence whose solution is  $O(n^{3/2})$ .

666 We prove the following surprising observation in Section 3.3: Although the medial graph of a plane graph  $G$   
 667 depends on the embedding of  $G$ , the defect of the medial graph of  $G$  does not. This result has some implications  
 668 on lower bounds for electrical transformations in Section 7.3.3. The chapter ends with some discussion on models  
 669 of random knots and its connection to defect bounds (Section 3.4).

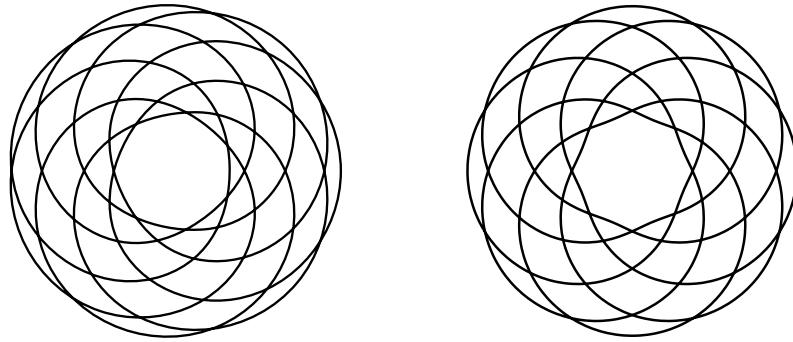
## 670 3.1 Defect Lower Bound

### 671 3.1.1 Flat Torus Knots

672 For any relatively prime integers  $p$  and  $q$ , let  $T(p, q)$  denote the curve with the following parametrization, where  
 673  $\theta$  runs from 0 to  $2\pi$ :

$$674 T(p, q)(\theta) := ((\cos(q\theta) + 2)\cos(p\theta), (\cos(q\theta) + 2)\sin(p\theta)).$$

675 The curve  $T(p, q)$  winds around the origin  $|p|$  times, oscillates  $|q|$  times between two concentric circles, and crosses  
 676 itself exactly  $(|p| - 1) \cdot |q|$  times. We call these curves **flat torus knots**.



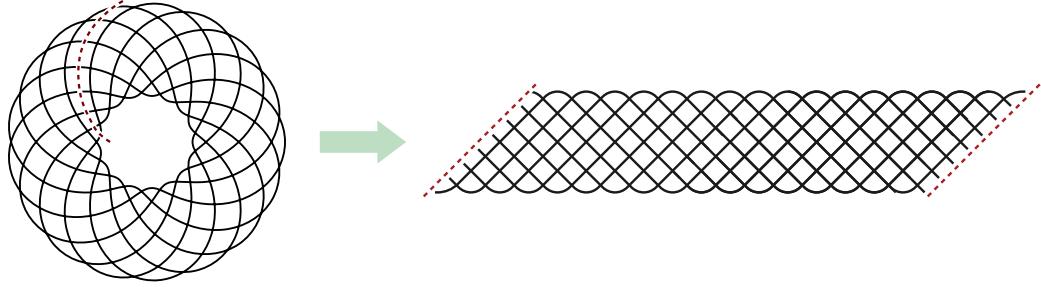
677 **Figure 3.1.** The flat torus knots  $T(8, 7)$  and  $T(7, 8)$ .

678 Hayashi *et al.* [139, Proposition 3.1] proved that for any integer  $q$ , the flat torus knot  $T(q+1, q)$  has defect  
 679  $-2\binom{q}{3}$ . Even-Zohar *et al.* [95] used a star-polygon representation of the curve  $T(p, 2p+1)$  as the basis for a universal  
 680 model of random knots; in our notation, they proved that  $\text{defect}(T(p, 2p+1)) = 4\binom{p+1}{3}$  for any integer  $p$ . In this  
 681 section we simplify and generalize both of these results to all flat torus knots  $T(p, q)$  where either  $q \bmod p = 1$  or  
 682  $p \bmod q = 1$ . For purposes of illustration, we cut  $T(p, q)$  along a spiral path parallel to a portion of the curve, and  
 683 then deform the  $p$  resulting subpaths, which we call *strands*, into a “flat braid” between two fixed diagonal lines.  
 See Figure 3.2.

684 **Lemma 3.1.**  $\text{defect}(T(p, ap+1)) = 2a\binom{p+1}{3}$  for all integers  $a \geq 0$  and  $p \geq 1$ .

685 **Proof:** The curve  $T(p, 1)$  can be reduced to a simple closed curve using only 1→0 moves, so its defect is zero. For  
 686 the rest of the proof, assume  $a \geq 1$ .

687 We define a *stripe* of  $T(p, ap+1)$  to be a subpath from some innermost point to the next outermost point,  
 688 or equivalently, a subpath of any strand from the bottom to the top in the flat braid representation. Each stripe

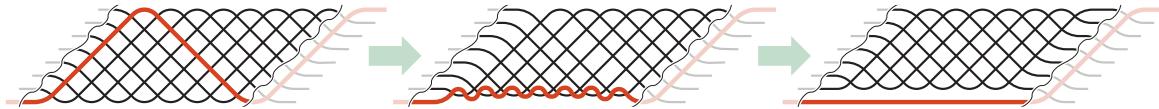


**Figure 3.2.** Transforming  $T(3,1)$  into a flat braid.

contains exactly  $p - 1$  crossings. A *block* of  $T(p, ap + 1)$  consists of  $p(p - 1)$  crossings in  $p$  consecutive stripes; within any block, each pair of strands intersects exactly twice. We can reduce  $T(p, ap + 1)$  to  $T(p, (a - 1)p + 1)$  by straightening any block one strand at a time. Straightening the bottom strand of the block requires the following  $\binom{p}{2}$  moves, as shown in Figure 3.3.

- $\binom{p-1}{2} 3 \rightarrow 3$  moves pull the bottom strand downward over one intersection point of every other pair of strands. Just before each  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move, exactly one of the three pairs of the three relevant vertices is interleaved, so each move decreases the defect by 2.
- $(p - 1) 2 \rightarrow 0$  moves eliminate a pair of intersection points between the bottom strand and every other strand. Each of these moves also decreases the defect by 2.

Altogether, straightening one strand decreases the defect by  $2\binom{p}{2}$ . Proceeding similarly with the other strands, we conclude that  $\text{defect}(T(p, ap + 1)) = \text{defect}(T(p, (a - 1)p + 1)) + 2\binom{p+1}{3}$ . The lemma follows immediately by induction.  $\square$



**Figure 3.3.** Straightening one strand in a block of  $T(8,8a+1)$ .

**Lemma 3.2.**  $\text{defect}(T(aq - 1, q)) = 2a\binom{q}{3}$  for all integers  $a \geq 0$  and  $q \geq 1$ .

**Proof:** The curve  $T(q - 1, q)$  is simple, so its defect is trivially zero. For any positive integer  $a$ , we can transform  $T(aq - 1, q)$  into  $T((a - 1)q - 1, q)$  by incrementally removing the innermost  $q$  loops. We can remove the first loop using  $\binom{q}{2}$  homotopy moves, as shown in Figure 3.4. (The first transition in Figure 3.4 just reconnects the top left and top right endpoints of the flat braid.)

- $\binom{q-1}{2} 3 \rightarrow 3$  moves pull the left side of the loop to the right, over the crossings inside the loop. Just before each  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move, the three relevant vertices contain one interleaved pair, so each move *decreases* the defect by 2.
- $(q - 1) 2 \rightarrow 0$  moves pull the loop over  $q - 1$  strands. The strands involved in each move are oriented in opposite directions, so these moves leave the defect unchanged.

- 711 • Finally, we can remove the loop with a single 1→0 move, which does not change the defect.

712 Altogether, removing one loop decreases the defect by  $2\binom{q-1}{2}$ . Proceeding similarly with the other loops, we con-  
713 clude that  $\text{defect}(T(aq-1, q)) = \text{defect}(T((a-1)q-1, q)) + 2\binom{q}{3}$ . The lemma follows immediately by induction.  $\square$

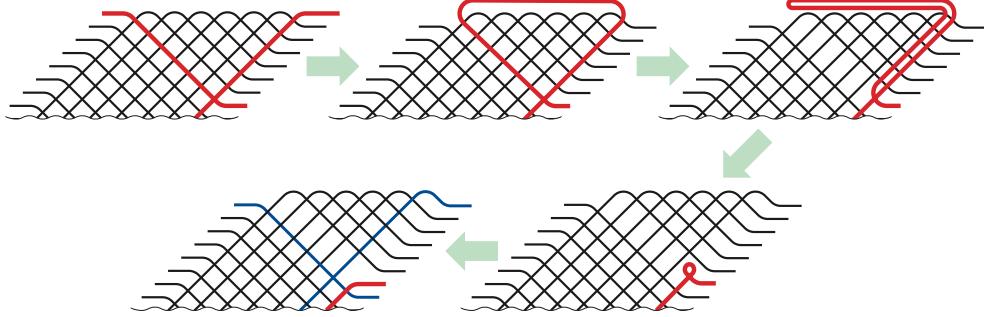


Figure 3.4. Removing one loop from the innermost block of  $T(7a-1, 7)$ .

714 From Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2 one concludes that the defect of planar curves can be of  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  in the worst  
715 case.

### 3.1.2 Defects of arbitrary flat torus knots

717 The argument in Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2 can be used to compute the defect of *any* flat torus knot  $T(p, q)$   
718 using a process similar to Euclid's algorithm. The only subtlety is determining how many 3→3 moves increase or  
719 decrease the defect.

720 Let  $[p]$  denote the set  $\{0, 1, \dots, p-1\}$ , and consider the permutation  $\pi: [p] \rightarrow [p]$  defined by setting  $\pi(i) :=$   
721  $iq \bmod p$ . We call a triple  $(i, j, k)$  of distinct indices in  $[p]$  *positive* if  $(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))$  is an even permutation of  
722  $(i, j, k)$  and *negative* otherwise. Finally, let  $\Delta(p, q)$  denote the number of positive triples minus the number of  
723 negative triples. We easily observe that  $\Delta(p, q) = \Delta(p, q \bmod p)$ , and the proofs of Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2  
724 imply the recurrence

$$725 \text{defect}(T(p, q)) = \begin{cases} \text{defect}(T(p, q-p)) + 2\Delta(p, q) + 2\binom{p}{2} & \text{if } p < q, \\ \text{defect}(T(p-q, q)) - 2\Delta(q, p) & \text{if } p > q. \end{cases}$$

726 This recurrence immediately gives us an algorithm to compute  $\text{defect}(T(p, q))$ , similar to Euclid's algorithm. Indeed,  
727 we can express  $\text{defect}(T(p, q))$  directly in terms of the continued fraction expansion of  $p/q$  as follows.

728 Let  $r_0 := p$  and  $r_1 := q$ . For all  $k \geq 1$  such that  $r_k > 1$ , define  $a_k := \lfloor r_{k-1}/r_k \rfloor$  and  $r_{k+1} := r_{k-1} \bmod r_k$ . Then  
729 we have

$$730 \text{defect}(T(p, q)) = 2 \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^k \cdot a_k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}} a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2}.$$

731 Using the above formula we can prove the *reciprocity formula* for the defect of flat torus knots.

732 **Lemma 3.3.** *For any positive integers  $p$  and  $q$ ,  $\text{defect}(T(p, q)) + \text{defect}(T(q, p)) = (p-1)(q-1)$ .*

733 **Proof:** Let  $m$  be the smallest number such that  $r_{m+1} = 1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 734 \quad \text{defect}(T(p,q)) + \text{defect}(T(q,p)) &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2} \\
 735 \quad &= \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \cdot r_k(r_k - 1) \\
 736 \quad &= \sum_{k=1}^m (r_{k-1} - r_{k+1})(r_k - 1) \\
 737 \quad &= (r_1 r_0 - r_m r_{m+1}) - (r_0 + r_1 - r_m - r_{m+1}) \\
 738 \quad &= (p-1)(q-1),
 739 
 \end{aligned}$$

740 which proves the statement.  $\square$

741 One has the immediate corollary of Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, and Lemma 3.3.

742 **Corollary 3.1.** *For all integers  $a \geq 0$  and  $p, q \geq 1$ , we have*

$$743 \quad \text{defect}(T(ap+1, p)) = -2a \binom{p}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{defect}(T(p, ap-1)) = -2a \binom{p}{3} + 2a \binom{p}{2} - 2(p-1).$$

744 **Fibonacci flat torus knots.** An easy symmetry argument implies that the number of negative triples in  $\pi$  is  
745 exactly  $\frac{p}{3}I(p, q)$ , where  $I(p, q)$  is the number of *inversions* in  $\pi$ . A classical theorem of Meyer [178] states that

$$746 \quad I(p, q) = \frac{1}{2} \binom{p-1}{2} - 3p \cdot s(q, p).$$

747 Here  $s(q, p)$  is the standard *Dedekind sum*

$$748 \quad s(q, p) := \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \left( \left( \frac{qi}{p} \right) \right) \left( \left( \frac{i}{p} \right) \right),$$

749 where  $(\cdot)$  is the *sawtooth function*

$$750 \quad ((x)) := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is an integer,} \\ (x \bmod 1) - \frac{1}{2} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

751 (For further background on Dedekind sums, including a self-contained proof of Meyer's theorem, see Rademacher  
752 and Grosswald [201].) It immediately follows that

$$753 \quad 754 \quad \Delta(p, q) = 2p^2 \cdot s(q, p),$$

755 where  $s(q, p)$  is the standard Dedekind sum. Dedekind [74] proved the following reciprocity formula when  $p$   
756 and  $q$  are relatively prime:

$$757 \quad s(p, q) + s(q, p) = -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{12} \left( \frac{p}{q} + \frac{1}{pq} + \frac{q}{p} \right).$$

758 From this reciprocity formula and the easy identity  $s(q, p) = s(q \bmod p, p)$ , one can derive exact values for the  
 759 Dedekind sum of consecutive Fibonacci numbers [10, p. 72],

$$760 \quad s(F_{n+1}, F_n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \\ \frac{F_n^2 + F_{n-1}^2 - 3F_n F_{n-1} + 1}{12F_n F_{n-1}} = \frac{-F_{n-2}}{6F_n} & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \end{cases}$$

761 and the exact values for defect on Fibonacci flat torus knots follow from careful calculations.

762 **Lemma 3.4.** *Let  $n$  be an odd number. We have the following.*

$$763 \quad \text{defect}(T(F_{n+1}, F_n)) = \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1 \quad \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1})) = \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1$$

$$764 \quad \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n+1})) = -\frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) + F_n F_{n+1} - F_{n+1} \quad \text{defect}(T(F_{n-1}, F_n)) = -\frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) + F_n F_{n-1} - F_{n-1}$$

766 As an immediate corollary, the absolute value of the defect of both flat torus knots  $T(F_n, F_{n-1})$  and  $T(F_{n-1}, F_n)$  are  
 767 linear for any  $n$ .

768 **Proof:** First let us calculate  $\text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1}))$ . Recall the defect formula using continued fraction of  $p/q$ :

$$769 \quad \text{defect}(T(p, q)) = 2 \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^k \cdot a_k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}} a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2}.$$

770 In the case of Fibonacci flat torus knots,  $r_k = F_{n-k}$ , and  $a_k = 1$  for all  $k \leq n-3$  (because  $r_{n-2} = F_2 = 1$ ). With the  
 771 assumption that  $n$  is an odd number, we have

$$772 \quad \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1})) = 2 \sum_{k \geq 1}^{n-3} (-1)^k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-3} \binom{r_k}{2}$$

$$773 \quad = 2 \sum_{k \geq 3}^{n-1} (-1)^k \cdot \Delta(F_k, F_{k+1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} \binom{F_k}{2} \quad [\text{replace } k \text{ with } n-k]$$

$$774 \quad = 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} 2F_k^2 \cdot \frac{-F_{k-2}}{6F_k} + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} \binom{F_k}{2} \quad [\text{plug in } \Delta(F_k, F_{k+1})]$$

$$775 \quad = \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} (3F_k^2 - 2F_k F_{k-2}) - \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} F_k \quad [\text{rearrange}]$$

$$776 \quad = \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} (F_k^2 + 2F_k F_{k-1}) - \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} F_k \quad [\text{apply } F_k = F_{k-1} + F_{k-2}]$$

$$777 \quad = \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} ((F_k + F_{k-1})^2 - F_{k-1}^2) - F_n + 2 \quad [\text{apply } \sum_{0 \leq i < n} F_{2i} = F_{2n-1} - 1]$$

$$778 \quad = \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1. \quad [\text{telescope sum}]$$

780 Similarly we can calculate  $\text{defect}(T(F_{n+1}, F_n))$ . (In fact, the answer is exactly the same.) Applying the reciprocity  
 781 formula (Lemma 3.3) gives us the last two equations.  $\square$

## 782 3.2 Defect Upper Bound

783 Polyak's formula [195] gives a straightforward quadratic upper bound on the defect of any closed curve in the  
 784 plane. In this section, we prove an  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound on the absolute value of the defect for any planar curves,  
 785 using a recursive inclusion-exclusion argument. This bound matches the asymptotic worst case behavior of defect  
 786 among all planar curves, as demonstrated in Section 3.1. Throughout this section, let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary non-simple  
 787 closed curve in the plane, and let  $n$  be the number of vertices of  $\gamma$ .

### 788 3.2.1 Winding Numbers and Diameter

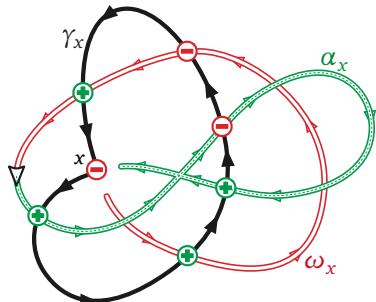
789 First we derive an upper bound in terms of the depth of the curve. We parametrize  $\gamma$  as a function  $\gamma: [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$ ,  
 790 where  $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1)$  is an arbitrarily chosen basepoint. For each vertex  $x$  of  $\gamma$ , let  $\gamma_x$  denote the closed subpath of  $\gamma$   
 791 from the first occurrence of  $x$  to the second. More formally, if  $x = \gamma(u) = \gamma(v)$  where  $0 < u < v < 1$ , then  $\gamma_x$  is the  
 792 closed curve defined by setting  $\gamma_x(t) := \gamma((1-t)u + tv)$  for all  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ .

793 **Lemma 3.5.** *For every vertex  $x$ , we have  $\sum_{y \in \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) = 2 \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x) - 2 \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)) - \text{sgn}(x)$ .*

794 **Proof:** Our proof follows an argument of Titus [238, Theorem 1].

795 Fix a vertex  $x = \gamma(u) = \gamma(v)$ , where  $0 < u < v < 1$ . Let  $\alpha_x$  denote the subpath of  $\gamma$  from  $\gamma(0)$  to  $\gamma(u - \varepsilon)$ , and  
 796 let  $\omega_x$  denote the subpath of  $\gamma$  from  $\gamma(v + \varepsilon)$  to  $\gamma(1) = \gamma(0)$ , for some sufficiently small  $\varepsilon > 0$ . Specifically, we  
 797 choose  $\varepsilon$  such that there are no vertices  $\gamma(t)$  where  $u - \varepsilon \leq t < u$  or  $v < t \leq v + \varepsilon$ . (See Figure 3.5.) A vertex  $y$   
 798 interleaves with  $x$  if and only if  $y$  is an intersection point of  $\gamma_x$  with either  $\alpha_x$  or  $\omega_x$ , so

$$799 \sum_{y \in \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) = \sum_{y \in \alpha_x \cap \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) + \sum_{y \in \gamma_x \cap \omega_x} \text{sgn}(y).$$



800 **Figure 3.5.** Proof of Lemma 3.5:  $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, x) = +1 - 1 + 1 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$

801 Now suppose we move a point  $p$  continuously along the path  $\alpha_x$ , starting at the basepoint  $\gamma(0)$ . The winding  
 802 number  $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$  changes by 1 each time this point  $\gamma_x$ . Each such crossing happens at a vertex of  $\gamma$  that lies  
 803 on both  $\alpha_x$  and  $\gamma_x$ ; if this vertex is positive,  $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$  increases by 1, and if this vertex is negative,  $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$   
 decreases by 1. It follows that

$$804 \sum_{y \in \alpha_x \cap \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(u - \varepsilon)) - \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)).$$

805 Symmetrically, if we move a point  $p$  backward along  $\omega_x$  from the basepoint, the winding number  $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$   
 806 increases (resp. decreases) by 1 whenever  $\gamma(t)$  passes through a positive (resp. negative) vertex in  $\omega_x \cap \gamma_x$ ; see

807 the red path in Figure 3.5. Thus,

$$808 \quad \sum_{y \in \omega_x \cap \gamma_x} \operatorname{sgn}(y) = \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(v + \varepsilon)) - \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)).$$

809 Finally, our sign convention for vertices implies

$$810 \quad \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(u - \varepsilon)) = \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(v + \varepsilon)) = \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x) - \operatorname{sgn}(x)/2,$$

811 which completes the proof.  $\square$

812 **Lemma 3.6.** *For any planar curve  $\gamma$ , we have  $|\operatorname{defect}(\gamma)| \leq 2n \cdot \operatorname{depth}(\gamma) + n$ .*

813 **Proof:** Polyak's defect formula can be rewritten as

$$814 \quad \operatorname{defect}(\gamma) = - \sum_x \operatorname{sgn}(x) \left( \sum_{y \neq x} \operatorname{sgn}(y) \right).$$

815 (This sum actually considers every pair of interleaved vertices twice, which is why the factor 2 is omitted.) Assume  
816 without loss of generality that the basepoint  $\gamma(0)$  lies on the outer face of  $\gamma$ , so that  $\operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)) = 0$  for every  
817 vertex  $x$ . Then Lemma 3.5 implies

$$818 \quad \operatorname{defect}(\gamma) = \sum_x \operatorname{sgn}(x) (\operatorname{sgn}(x) - 2 \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x)) = n - 2 \sum_x \operatorname{sgn}(x) \cdot \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x),$$

819 and therefore

$$820 \quad |\operatorname{defect}(\gamma)| \leq n + 2 \sum_x |\operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x)|.$$

821 We easily observe that  $|\operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x)| \leq \operatorname{depth}(x, \gamma_x) \leq \operatorname{depth}(x, \gamma)$  for every vertex  $x$ ; the second inequality follows  
822 from the fact that no path crosses  $\gamma_x$  more times than it crosses  $\gamma$ . The lemma now follows immediately.  $\square$

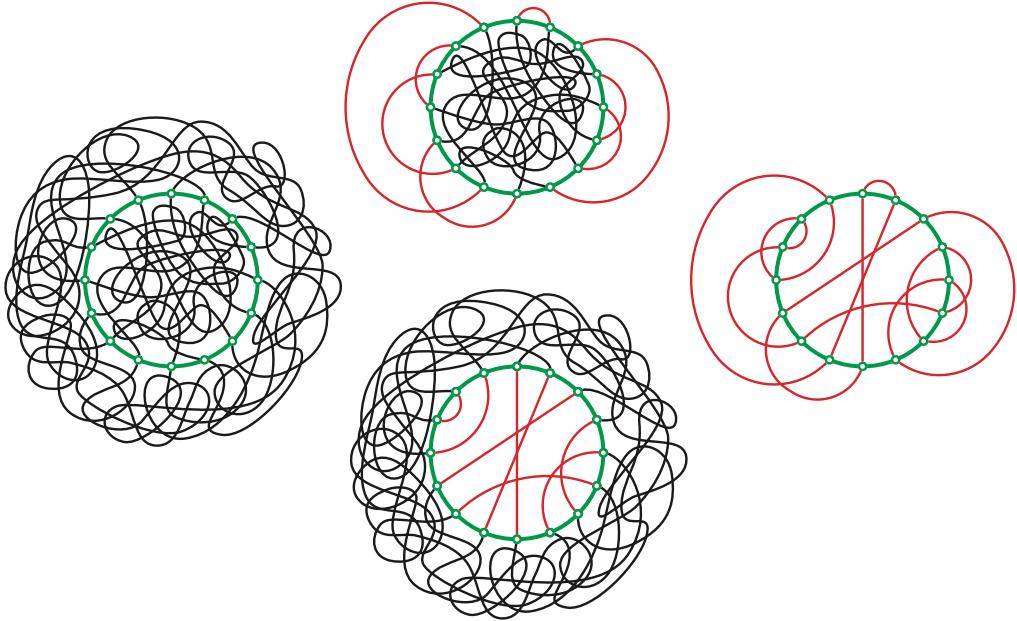
823 The quantity  $\sum_x \operatorname{sgn}(x) \cdot \operatorname{wind}(\gamma_x, x)$  is equivalent, up to a factor of 4, to the curve invariant  $\alpha(\gamma)$  introduced by  
824 Lin and Wang [167], which they defined as the limit of a certain integral (due to Bar-Natan [19]) over a smooth  
825 knot in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  that projects to  $\gamma$ , as the knot approaches the plane of projection.

826 As we will see the upper bound  $|\operatorname{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n \cdot \operatorname{depth}(\gamma))$  also follows from either our  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound  
827 for homotopy moves (Lemma 5.1) which serves as an upper bound on defect (Lemma 4.1), or from the relation  
828 between number of medial electrical moves and defect (Theorem 7.2) and the electrical reduction algorithm of  
829 Feo and Provan [100].

### 830 3.2.2 Inclusion-Exclusion

831 Now let  $\sigma$  be a simple closed curve that intersects  $\gamma$  only transversely and away from its vertices. By the Jordan  
832 curve theorem, we can assume without loss of generality that  $\sigma$  is a Euclidean circle, the number of intersection  
833 points between  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma$  is even, and the intersection points are evenly spaced around  $\sigma$ . We arbitrarily refer to  
834 the two tangles defined by  $\sigma$  as the *interior* and *exterior* tangles of  $\sigma$ . Let  $z_0, z_1, \dots, z_{s-1}$  be the points in  $\sigma \cap \gamma$   
835 in order along  $\gamma$  (not in order along  $\sigma$ ). These intersection points decompose  $\gamma$  into a sequence of  $s$  subpaths  
836  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$ ; specifically,  $\gamma_i$  is the subpath of  $\gamma$  from  $z_{i-1}$  to  $z_{i \bmod s}$ , for each index  $i$ . Without loss of generality,  
837 every odd-indexed path  $\gamma_{2i+1}$  lies outside  $\sigma$ , and every even-indexed path  $\gamma_{2i}$  lies inside  $\sigma$ .

Let  $\gamma \Cap \sigma$  and  $\gamma \Cup \sigma$  denote the closed curves that result from tightening the interior and exterior tangles of  $\sigma$ , respectively.<sup>2</sup> To put it differently, let  $\gamma \Cap \sigma$  denote a generic curve obtained from  $\gamma$  by continuously deforming all subpaths  $\gamma_i$  inside  $\sigma$ , keeping their endpoints fixed and never moving across  $\sigma$ , to minimize the number of intersections. (There may be several curves that satisfy the minimum-intersection condition; choose one arbitrarily.) Similarly, let  $\gamma \Cup \sigma$  denote any generic curve obtained by continuously deforming the subpaths  $\gamma_i$  outside  $\sigma$  to minimize intersections. Finally, let  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  denote the generic curve obtained by deforming *all* subpaths  $\gamma_i$  to minimize intersections; in other words,  $\gamma \odot \sigma := (\gamma \Cap \sigma) \Cup \sigma = (\gamma \Cup \sigma) \Cap \sigma$ . See Figure 3.6.



**Figure 3.6.** Clockwise from left:  $\gamma$ ,  $\gamma \Cup \sigma$ ,  $\gamma \odot \sigma$ , and  $\gamma \Cap \sigma$ . The green circle in all four figures is  $\sigma$ .

To simplify notation, we define

$$\text{defect}(x, y) := [x \between y] \cdot \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y)$$

for any two vertices  $x$  and  $y$ , where  $[x \between y] := 1$  if  $x$  and  $y$  are interleaved and  $[x \between y] = 0$  otherwise. Then we can write the defect of  $\gamma$  as

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{x,y} \text{defect}(x, y).$$

Every vertex of  $\gamma$  lies at the intersection of two (not necessarily distinct) subpaths. For any index  $i$ , let  $X(i, i)$  denote the set of self-intersection points of  $\gamma_i$ , and for any indices  $i < j$ , let  $X(i, j)$  be the set of points where  $\gamma_i$  intersects  $\gamma_j$ .

If two vertices  $x \in X(i, k)$  and  $y \in X(j, l)$  are interleaved, then we must have  $i \leq j \leq k \leq l$ . Thus, we can express the defect of  $\gamma$  in terms of crossings between subpaths  $\gamma_i$  as follows.

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{i \leq j \leq k \leq l} \sum_{x \in X(i, k)} \sum_{y \in X(j, l)} \text{defect}(x, y)$$

---

<sup>2</sup>We recommend pronouncing  $\Cap$  as “tightened inside” and  $\Cup$  as “tightened outside”; note that the symbols  $\Cap$  and  $\Cup$  resemble the second letters of “inside” and “outside”.

On the other hand, if  $i < j < k < l$ , then every vertex  $x \in \gamma_i \cap \gamma_k$  is interleaved with every vertex of  $y \in \gamma_j \cap \gamma_l$ . Thus, we can express the contribution to the defect from pairs of vertices on four *distinct* subpaths as follows:

$$\text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) := -2 \sum_{i < j < k < l} \sum_{x \in X(i,k)} \sum_{y \in X(j,l)} \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y)$$

We can express this function more succinctly as

$$\text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) = -2 \sum_{i < j < k < l} \text{defect}(i, k) \cdot \text{defect}(j, l)$$

by defining

$$\text{defect}(i, j) := \sum_{x \in X(i,j)} \text{sgn}(x)$$

for all indices  $i < j$ .

The following lemma implies that continuously deforming the subpaths  $\gamma_i$  without crossing  $\sigma$  leaves the value  $\text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma)$  unchanged, even though such a deformation may change the defect  $\text{defect}(\gamma)$ .

**Lemma 3.7.** *The value  $\text{defect}(i, j)$  depends only on the parity of  $i + j$  and the cyclic order of the endpoints of  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  around  $\sigma$ .*

**Proof:** There are only three cases to consider.

If  $i + j$  is odd, then  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  lie on opposite sides of  $\sigma$  and therefore do not intersect, so  $\text{defect}(i, j) = 0$ . For all other cases,  $i + j$  is even, which implies without loss of generality that  $j \geq i + 2$ .

Suppose the endpoints of  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  do not alternate in cyclic order around  $\sigma$ , or equivalently, that the corresponding subpaths of  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  are disjoint. The Jordan curve theorem implies that there must be equal numbers of positive and negative intersections between  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$ , and therefore  $\text{defect}(i, j) = 0$ .

Finally, suppose the endpoints of  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  alternate in cyclic order around  $\sigma$ , or equivalently, that the corresponding subpaths of  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  intersect exactly once. Then  $\text{defect}(i, j) = 1$  if the endpoints  $z_i, z_j, z_{i-1}, z_{j-1}$  appear in clockwise order around  $\sigma$  and  $\text{defect}(i, j) = -1$  otherwise.  $\square$

Now consider an interleaved pair of vertices  $x \in X(i, k)$  and  $y \in X(j, l)$  where at least two of the indices  $i, j, k, l$  are equal. Trivially,  $i$  and  $k$  have the same parity, and  $j$  and  $l$  also have the same parity. If  $i = j$  or  $i = l$  or  $j = k$  or  $j = l$ , then all four indices have the same parity. If  $i = k$ , then we must also have  $i = j$  or  $i = l$  (or both), so again, all four indices have the same parity. We conclude that  $x$  and  $y$  are either both inside  $\sigma$  or both outside  $\sigma$ .

**Lemma 3.8.** *For any closed curve  $\gamma$  and any simple closed curve  $\sigma$  that intersects  $\gamma$  only transversely and away from its vertices, we have  $\text{defect}(\gamma) = \text{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)$ .*

**Proof:** Let us write  $\text{defect}(\gamma) = \text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) + \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma) + \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma)$ , where

- $\text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma)$  considers pairs of vertices on four different subpaths  $\gamma_i$ , as above,
- $\text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma)$  considers pairs of vertices inside  $\sigma$  on at most three different subpaths  $\gamma_i$ , and
- $\text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma)$  considers pairs of vertices outside  $\sigma$  on at most three different subpaths  $\gamma_i$ .

Lemma 3.7 implies that

$$\text{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) = \text{defect}^\#(\gamma \cap \sigma, \sigma) = \text{defect}^\#(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) = \text{defect}^\#(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma).$$

889 The definitions of  $\gamma \cap \sigma$  and  $\gamma \cup \sigma$  immediately imply the following:

$$\begin{aligned} 890 \quad \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \cap \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma) & \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \cap \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma) \\ 891 \quad \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma) & \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma) \end{aligned}$$

893 The lemma now follows from straightforward substitution.  $\square$

894 **Lemma 3.9.** *For any closed curve  $\gamma$  and any simple closed curve  $\sigma$  that intersects  $\gamma$  only transversely and away  
895 from its vertices, we have  $|\text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)| = O(|\gamma \cap \sigma|^3)$ .*

896 **Proof:** Fix an arbitrary reference point  $z \in \sigma \setminus \gamma$ . For any point  $p$  in the plane, there is a path from  $p$  to  $z$  that  
897 crosses  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  at most  $O(s)$  times. Specifically, move from  $p$  to the nearest point on  $\gamma \odot \sigma$ , then follow  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  to  $\sigma$ ,  
898 and finally follow  $\sigma$  to the reference point  $z$ . It follows that  $\text{depth}(\gamma \odot \sigma) = O(s)$ . The curve  $\gamma \odot \sigma$  has at most  
899  $2\binom{s/2}{2} = O(s^2)$  vertices. The bound  $|\text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)| = O(s^3)$  now immediately follows from Lemma 3.6.  $\square$

### 900 3.2.3 Divide and Conquer

901 We call a simple closed curve  $\sigma$  **useful** for  $\gamma$  if  $\sigma$  intersects  $\gamma$  transversely away from its vertices, and the interior  
902 tangle  $\Theta$  of  $\sigma$  has at least  $s^2$  vertices, where  $s := |\sigma \cap \gamma|/2$  is the number of strands in  $\Theta$ .<sup>3</sup>

903 **Lemma 3.10.** *Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary non-simple closed curve in the plane with  $n$  vertices. Either there is a useful  
904 simple closed curve for  $\gamma$  whose interior tangle has depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , or the depth of  $\gamma$  is  $O(\sqrt{n})$ .*

905 **Proof:** To simplify notation, let  $d := \text{depth}(\gamma)$ . For each integer  $j$  between 1 and  $d$ , let  $R_j$  be the set of points  $p$   
906 with  $\text{depth}(p, \gamma) \geq d + 1 - j$ , and let  $\tilde{R}_j$  denote a small open neighborhood of the closure of  $R_j \cup \tilde{R}_{j-1}$ , where  $\tilde{R}_0$  is  
907 the empty set. Each region  $\tilde{R}_j$  is the disjoint union of closed disks, whose boundary cycles intersect  $\gamma$  transversely  
908 away from its vertices, if at all. In particular,  $\tilde{R}_d$  is a disk containing the entire curve  $\gamma$ .

909 Fix a point  $z$  such that  $\text{depth}(z, \gamma) = d$ . For each integer  $j$ , let  $\Sigma_j$  be the unique component of  $\tilde{R}_j$  that contains  $z$ ,  
910 and let  $\sigma_j$  be the boundary of  $\Sigma_j$ . Then  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_d$  are disjoint, nested, simple closed curves; see Figure 3.7.  
911 Let  $n_j$  be the number of vertices and let  $s_j := |\gamma \cap \sigma_j|/2$  be the number of strands of the interior tangle of  $\sigma_j$ . For  
912 notational convenience, we define  $\Sigma_0 := \emptyset$  and thus  $n_0 = s_0 = 0$ . We ignore the outermost curve  $\sigma_d$ , because it  
913 contains the entire curve  $\gamma$ . The next outermost curve  $\sigma_{d-1}$  contains every vertex of  $\gamma$ , so  $n_{d-1} = n$ .

914 By construction, for each  $j$ , the interior tangle of  $\sigma_j$  has depth  $j + 1$ . Thus, to prove the lemma, it suffices to  
915 show by induction that if none of the curves  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_{d-1}$  is useful, then  $d = O(\sqrt{n})$ .

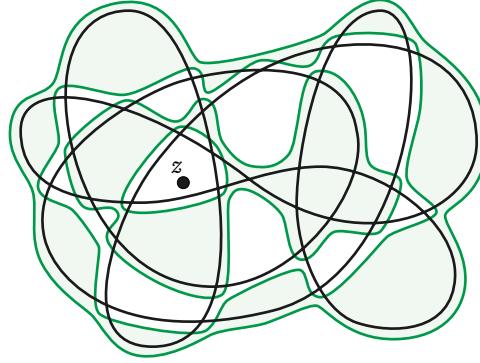
916 Fix an index  $j$ . Each edge of  $\gamma$  crosses  $\sigma_j$  at most twice. Any edge of  $\gamma$  that crosses  $\sigma_j$  has at least one  
917 endpoint in the annulus  $\Sigma_j \setminus \Sigma_{j-1}$ , and any edge that crosses  $\sigma_j$  twice has both endpoints in  $\Sigma_j \setminus \Sigma_{j-1}$ . Conversely,  
918 each vertex in  $\Sigma_j$  is incident to at most two edges that cross  $\sigma_j$  and no edges that cross  $\sigma_{j+1}$ . It follows that  
919  $|\sigma_j \cap \gamma| \leq 2(n_j - n_{j-1})$ , and therefore  $n_j \geq n_{j-1} + s_j$ . Thus, by induction, we have

$$920 \quad n_j \geq \sum_{i=1}^j s_i$$

921 for every index  $j$ .

---

<sup>3</sup>We could define  $\sigma$  to be useful if there are at least  $\alpha \cdot s^2$  vertices in the interior tangle, and then optimize  $\alpha$  to minimize the resulting upper bound.



**Figure 3.7.** Nested depth cycles around a point of maximum depth.

Now suppose no curve  $\sigma_j$  with  $1 \leq j < d$  is useful. Then we must have  $s_j^2 > n_j$  and therefore

$$s_j^2 > \sum_{i=1}^j s_i$$

for all  $1 \leq j < d$ . Trivially,  $s_1 \geq 1$ , because  $\gamma$  is non-simple. A straightforward induction argument implies that  $s_j \geq (j+1)/2$  and therefore

$$n = n_{d-1} \geq \sum_{i=1}^{d-1} \frac{i+1}{2} \geq \frac{1}{2} \binom{d+1}{2} > \frac{d^2}{4}.$$

We conclude that  $d \leq 2\sqrt{n}$ , which completes the proof.  $\square$

We are now finally ready to prove our main upper bound.

**Theorem 3.1.**  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n^{3/2})$  for every closed curve  $\gamma$  in the plane with  $n$  vertices.

**Proof:** We prove by induction on  $n$  that  $\text{defect}(\gamma) \leq C \cdot n^{3/2}$  for any closed curve  $\gamma$  with  $n$  vertices, for some absolute constant  $C$  to be determined.

Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary closed curve with  $n$  vertices. Let  $\sigma$  be a simple closed curve that is useful for  $\gamma$  (that is,  $m \geq s^2$ ) whose interior tangle has depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , as guaranteed by Lemma 3.10. (If there are no useful curves, then Lemma 3.6 implies that  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n^{3/2})$ .) Let  $s := |\gamma \cap \sigma|/2$ . Lemma 3.8 implies

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = \text{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma \circ \sigma).$$

Suppose there are  $m$  vertices of  $\gamma$  lying in the interior of  $\sigma$ . Because the interior tangle of  $\sigma$  has depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , it follows that  $\text{depth}(\gamma \cup \sigma) = O(\sqrt{n} + s)$ , and therefore by Lemma 3.6 and Lemma 3.9 this implies

$$|\text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma)| + |\text{defect}(\gamma \circ \sigma)| = O((\sqrt{n} + s) \cdot (m + s^2/2)) = O(m\sqrt{n}).$$

Because  $\sigma$  is useful for  $\gamma$ ,  $\gamma \cap \sigma$  has at most  $n - m + s^2/2 < n$  vertices. By the inductive hypothesis one has

$$|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq C(n - m + s^2/2)^{3/2} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n}$$

941 for some constant  $c$ . The inequality  $(x - y)^{3/2} \leq (x - y)x^{1/2} = x^{3/2} - yx^{1/2}$  now implies

$$942 |defect(\gamma)| \leq Cn^{3/2} - C(m - s^2/2)\sqrt{n} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n}.$$

943 Finally, again because  $\sigma$  is useful, we must have  $m - s^2/2 \geq m/2$ , which implies

$$944 |defect(\gamma)| \leq Cn^{3/2} - C(m/2)\sqrt{n} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n} \\ 945 = Cn^{3/2} - (C/2 - c)m\sqrt{n}. \\ 946$$

947 Provided  $C/c \geq 2$ , then  $|defect(\gamma)| \leq Cn^{3/2}$ , as required.  $\square$

### 948 3.3 Medial Defect is Independent of Planar Embeddings

949 Recall that an embedded graph  $G$  is *unicursal* if its medial graph  $G^\times$  is the image of a single closed curve. The goal  
950 of the section is to prove that following surprising property about defect: The defect of the medial graph of an  
951 arbitrary unicursal planar graph  $G$  does not depend on its embedding.

952 **Theorem 3.2.** *Let  $G$  and  $H$  be planar embeddings of the same abstract planar graph. If  $G$  is unicursal, then  $H$  is  
953 unicursal and  $defect(G^\times) = defect(H^\times)$ .*

#### 954 3.3.1 Navigating Between Planar Embeddings

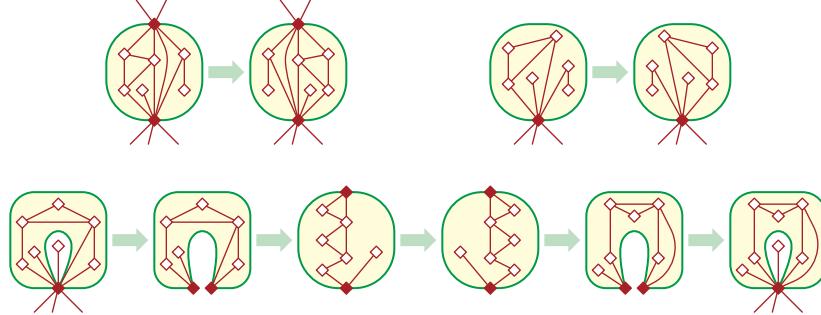
955 A classical result of Adkisson [3] and Whitney [256] is that every 3-connected planar graph has an essentially  
956 unique planar embedding. Mac Lane [175] described how to count the planar embeddings of any biconnected  
957 planar graph, by decomposing it into its triconnected components. Stallmann [228, 229] and Cai [31] extended  
958 Mac Lane's algorithm to arbitrary planar graphs, by decomposing them into biconnected components. Mac Lane's  
959 decomposition is also the basis of the SPQR-tree data structure of Di Battista and Tamassia [78, 79], which encodes  
960 all planar embeddings of an arbitrary planar graph.

961 Mac Lane's structural results imply that any planar embedding of a 2-connected planar graph  $G$  can be  
962 transformed into any other embedding by a finite sequence of *split reflections*, defined as follows. A *split curve* is  
963 a simple closed curve  $\sigma$  whose intersection with the embedding of  $G$  consists of two vertices  $x$  and  $y$ ; without  
964 loss of generality,  $\sigma$  is a circle with  $x$  and  $y$  at opposite points. A split reflection modifies the embedding of  $G$  by  
965 reflecting the subgraph inside  $\sigma$  across the line through  $x$  and  $y$ .

966 **Lemma 3.11.** *Let  $G$  be an arbitrary 2-connected planar graph. Any planar embedding of  $G$  can be transformed  
967 into any other planar embedding of  $G$  by a finite sequence of split reflections.*

968 To navigate among the planar embeddings of arbitrary connected planar graphs, we need two additional  
969 operations. First, we allow split curves that intersect  $G$  at only a single cut vertex; a *cut reflection* modifies the  
970 embedding of  $G$  by reflecting the subgraph inside such a curve. More interestingly, we also allow degenerate split  
971 curves that pass through a cut vertex  $x$  of  $G$  twice, but are otherwise simple and disjoint from  $G$ . The interior  
972 of a degenerate split curve  $\sigma$  is an open topological disk. A *cut eversion* is a degenerate split reflection that  
973 everts the embedding of the subgraph of  $G$  inside such a curve, intuitively by mapping the interior of  $\sigma$  to an  
974 open circular disk (with two copies of  $x$  on its boundary), reflecting the interior subgraph, and then mapping

975 the resulting embedding back to the interior of  $\sigma$ . Structural results of Stallman [228, 229] and Di Battista and  
 976 Tamassia [79, Section 7] imply the following.



**Figure 3.8.** Top row: A regular split reflection and a cut reflection. Bottom row: a cut eversion.

977 **Lemma 3.12.** Let  $G$  be an arbitrary connected planar graph. Any planar embedding of  $G$  can be transformed into  
 978 any other planar embedding of  $G$  by a finite sequence of split reflections, cut reflections, and cut eversions.

### 979 3.3.2 Tangle Flips

980 Now consider the effect of the operations stated in Lemma 3.12 on the medial graph  $G^\times$ . By assumption,  $G$  is  
 981 unicursal so that  $G^\times$  is a single closed curve. Let  $\sigma$  be any (possibly degenerate) split curve for  $G$ . Embed  $G^\times$  so  
 982 that every medial vertex lies on the corresponding edge in  $G$ , and every medial edge intersects  $\sigma$  at most once.  
 983 Then  $\sigma$  intersects at most four edges of  $G^\times$ , so the tangle of  $G^\times$  inside  $\sigma$  has at most two strands. Moreover,  
 984 reflecting (or evertting) the subgraph of  $G$  inside  $\sigma$  induces a *flip* of this tangle of  $G^\times$ . Any tangle can be *flipped* by  
 985 reflecting the disk containing it, so that each strand endpoint maps to a different strand endpoint; see Figure 3.9.  
 986 Straightforward case analysis implies that flipping any tangle of  $G^\times$  with at most two strands transforms  $G^\times$  into  
 987 another closed curve.



**Figure 3.9.** Flipping tangles with one and two strands.

988 The main result of this subsection is that the resulting curve has the same defect as  $G^\times$ .

989 **Lemma 3.13.** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary closed curve on the sphere. Flipping any tangle of  $\gamma$  with one strand yields  
 990 another closed curve  $\gamma'$  with  $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$ .

991 **Proof:** Let  $\sigma$  be a simple closed curve that crosses  $\gamma$  at exactly two points. These points decompose  $\sigma$  into two  
 992 subpaths  $\alpha \cdot \beta$ , where  $\alpha$  is the unique strand of the interior tangle and  $\beta$  is the unique strand of the exterior tangle.  
 993 Let  $\Sigma$  denote the interior disk of  $\sigma$ , and let  $\phi : \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma$  denote the homeomorphism that flips the interior tangle.  
 994 Flipping the interior tangle yields the closed curve  $\gamma' := \text{rev}(\phi(\alpha)) \cdot \beta$ , where  $\text{rev}$  denotes path reversal.

995 No vertex of  $\alpha$  is interleaved with a vertex of  $\beta$ ; thus, two vertices in  $\gamma'$  are interleaved if and only if the  
 996 corresponding vertices in  $\gamma$  are interleaved. Every vertex of  $\text{rev}(\phi(\alpha))$  has the same sign as the corresponding  
 997 vertex of  $\alpha$ , since both the orientation of the vertex and the order of traversals through the vertex changed. Thus,  
 998 every vertex of  $\gamma'$  has the same sign as the corresponding vertex of  $\gamma$ . We conclude that  $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$ .  $\square$

999 **Lemma 3.14.** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary closed curve on the sphere. Flipping any tangle of  $\gamma$  with two strands yields  
1000 another closed curve  $\gamma'$  with  $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$ .

1001 **Proof:** Let  $\sigma$  be a simple closed curve that crosses  $\gamma$  at exactly four points. These four points naturally decompose  $\gamma$   
1002 into four subpaths  $\alpha \cdot \delta \cdot \beta \cdot \varepsilon$ , where  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are the strands of the interior tangle of  $\sigma$ , and  $\delta$  and  $\varepsilon$  are the  
1003 strands of the exterior tangle. Flipping the interior tangle either exchanges  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , reverses  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , or both;  
1004 see Figure 3.10. In every case, the result is a single closed curve  $\gamma'$ .

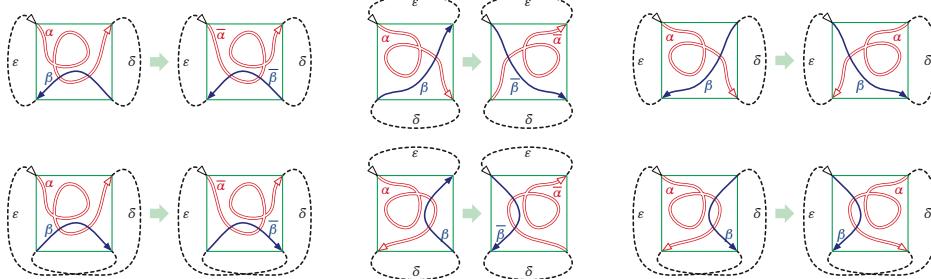


Figure 3.10. Flipping all six types of 2-strand tangle.

1005 Let  $\gamma'$  be the result of flipping the interior tangle. The curve  $\gamma' \sqcup \sigma$  is just a reflection of  $\gamma \sqcup \sigma$ , which implies  
1006 that  $\text{defect}(\gamma' \sqcup \sigma) = \text{defect}(\gamma \sqcup \sigma)$ , and straightforward case analysis implies  $\gamma' \cap \sigma = \gamma \cap \sigma$  and  $\gamma' \odot \sigma = \gamma \odot \sigma$ .  
1007 We conclude by the inclusion-exclusion formula for defect (Lemma 3.8) that

$$\begin{aligned} 1008 \text{defect}(\gamma') &= \text{defect}(\gamma' \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma' \sqcup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma' \odot \sigma) \\ 1009 &= \text{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma \sqcup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma) = \text{defect}(\gamma). \\ 1010 \end{aligned}$$

1011  $\square$

1012 Now Theorem 3.2 follows immediately from Lemmas 3.12, 3.13, and 3.14.

### 1013 3.4 Implications for Random Knots

1014 Finally, we describe some interesting implications of our results on the expected behavior of random knots,  
1015 following earlier results of Lin and Wang [167], Polyak [195], and new results of Even-Zohar, Hass, Linial, and  
1016 Nowik [95, 96, 97]. We refer the reader to Burde and Zieschang [27] or Kauffman [151] for further background  
1017 on knot theory, to Chmutov, Duzhin, and Mostovoy [57] for a detailed overview of finite-type knot invariants, and  
1018 Even-Zohar [94] for a survey and some new results on the random knot models; we include only a few elementary  
1019 definitions to keep the presentation self-contained.

1020 A **knot** is (the image of) a continuous injective map from the circle into  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Two knots are considered equivalent  
1021 (more formally, *ambient isotopic*) if there is a continuous deformation of  $\mathbb{R}^3$  that deforms one knot into the other.  
1022 Knots are often represented by **knot diagrams**, which are 4-regular plane graphs defined by a generic projection  
1023 of the knot onto the plane, with an annotation at each vertex indicating which branch of the knot is “over” or  
1024 “under” the other. Call any crossing  $x$  in a knot diagram *ascending* if the first branch through  $x$  after the basepoint  
1025 passes over the second, and *descending* otherwise.

1026 The **Casson invariant**  $c_2$  is the simplest finite-type knot invariant; it is also equal to the second coefficient of  
1027 the Conway polynomial [24, 198]. Polyak and Viro [197, 198] derived the following combinatorial formula for the

1028 Casson invariant of a knot diagram  $\kappa$ :

$$1029 \quad c_2(\kappa) = - \sum_{\text{descending } x} \sum_{\text{ascending } y} [x \between y] \cdot \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y).$$

1030 Like defect, the value of  $c_2(\kappa)$  is independent of the choice of basepoint or orientation of the underlying curve  $\gamma$ ;  
 1031 moreover, if the knots represented by diagrams  $\kappa$  and  $\kappa'$  are equivalent, then  $c_2(\kappa) = c_2(\kappa')$ .

1032 Polyak [195, Theorem 7] observed that if a knot diagram  $\kappa$  is obtained from an arbitrary closed curve  $\gamma$  by  
 1033 independently resolving each crossing as ascending or descending with equal probability, then one can relate the  
 1034 expectation of Casson invariant  $c_2(\kappa)$  and the defect of  $\gamma$  by

$$1035 \quad E[c_2(\kappa)] = \text{defect}(\gamma)/8.$$

1036 The same observation is implicit in earlier results of Lin and Wang [167]; and (for specific curves) in the later  
 1037 results of Even-Zohar *et al.* [95].

1038 Even-Zohar *et al.* [95] studied the distribution of the Casson invariant for two models of random knots, the  
 1039 Petaluma model of Adams *et al.* [1, 2], which uses singular one-vertex diagrams consisting of  $2p + 1$  disjoint  
 1040 non-nested loops for some integer  $p$ , and the star model, which uses (a polygonal version of) the flat torus knot  
 1041  $T(p, 2p + 1)$  for some integer  $p$ . Even-Zohar *et al.* prove that the expected value of the Casson invariant is  $\binom{p}{2}/12$   
 1042 in the Petaluma model and  $\binom{p+1}{3}/2 \approx 0.03n^{3/2}$  in the star model. Later they studied the Petaluma model in further  
 1043 details [96]; in particular, the probability that Casson invariant of a random knot is equal to a given value decreases  
 1044 to zero as the number of petals grows.

1045 Our defect analysis in Section 3.2 implies an upper bound on the Casson invariant for knot diagrams generated  
 1046 from *any* family of generic closed curves.

1047 **Corollary 3.2.** *Let  $\gamma$  be any generic closed curve with  $n$  vertices, and let  $\kappa$  be a knot diagram obtained by resolving  
 1048 each vertex of  $\gamma$  independently and uniformly at random. Then  $|E[c_2(\kappa)]| = O(n^{3/2})$ .*

1049 Our results also imply that the distribution of the Casson invariant depends strongly on the precise parameters  
 1050 of the random model; even the sign and growth rate of  $E[c_2]$  depend on which curves are used to generate knot  
 1051 diagrams. For example:

- 1052 • For random diagrams over the flat torus knot  $T(p + 1, p)$ , we have  $E[c_2(\kappa)] = -\binom{p}{3}/4 = -n^{3/2}/24 + \Theta(n)$ .
- 1053 • For random diagrams over the Fibonacci flat torus knot  $T(F_{k+1}, F_k)$ , we have  $E[c_2(\kappa)] = \frac{1}{3}(F_k^2 - 1) - F_k + 1 =$   
 1054  $n/3\phi + \Theta(\sqrt{n})$ , where  $\phi := (\sqrt{5} + 1)/2$  is the golden ratio.
- 1055 • For random diagrams over the connected sum  $T(p - 1, p) \# T(p + 1, p)$ , we have  $E[c_2(\kappa)] = 0$ .

# Chapter 4

## Lower Bounds for Tightening Curves

1056            *Lower bounds are hard. But that doesn't mean that no progress can be made. To get  
a lower bound, it is required [...] that you make a (possible restrictive) model of all  
algorithms or data-structures that can solve your problem.*

— Discrete lizard, Computer Science Stack Exchange q91156

1057            In this chapter we prove the first non-trivial lower bounds on number of homotopy moves required to tighten  
1058            closed curves, both in the plane and on higher-genus surfaces. First, in Section 4.1, we derive an  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  lower  
1059            bound on number of homotopy moves required to simplify any planar curve, using lower bound results on defect  
1060            we have in Section 3.1, and the fact that each homotopy move changes the defect of a closed curve by at most 2.  
1061            As for planar multicurves, using winding-number arguments we prove that in the worst case, simplifying an  
1062            arrangement of  $k$  closed curves requires  $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk)$  homotopy moves, with an additional  $\Omega(k^2)$  term if the target  
1063            configuration is specified in advance.

1064            In Section 4.2, we consider curves on surfaces of higher genus. Extending the notion of defect invariant, we  
1065            prove that  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves are required in the worst case to transform one non-contractible closed curve  
1066            to another on the torus, and therefore on any orientable surface. Results of Hass and Scott [135] imply that this  
1067            lower bound is tight if the non-contractible closed curve is homotopic to a simple closed curve.

1068            We then construct an infinite family of contractible curves on the annulus that require at least  $\Omega(n^2)$  moves to  
1069            tighten in Section 4.3, using a complete different curve invariant than defect. Our new lower bound generalizes to  
1070            any surface that has the annulus as a covering space—that is, any surface except for the sphere, the disk, or the  
1071            projective plane.

### 4.1 Lower Bounds for Planar Curves

1072            Now we prove our lower bounds for simplifying closed curves in the plane through the defect invariant. Straight-  
1073            forward case analysis [195] implies that any single homotopy move changes the defect of a curve by at most 2;  
1074            the various cases are listed below and illustrated in Figure 4.1.

- 1076            • A  $1 \rightarrow 0$  move leaves the defect unchanged.
- 1077            • A  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move decreases the defect by 2 if the two disappearing vertices are interleaved, and leaves the defect  
1078                   unchanged otherwise.
- 1079            • A  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move increases the defect by 2 if the three vertices before the move contain an even number of  
1080                   interleaved pairs, and decreases the defect by 2 otherwise.

1081            In light of this case analysis, the following lemma is trivial:

1082            **Lemma 4.1.** *Simplifying any closed curve  $\gamma$  in the plane requires at least  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$  homotopy moves.*

Move	1→0	2→0	3→3
<i>St</i>	-w	0	0
$J^+$	$2w$	0	-2
defect	0	0	-2
			+1
			+1
			+2
			+2

**Figure 4.1.** Changes to Arnold's invariants:  $St$ ,  $J^+$ , and defect incurred by homotopy moves. Numbers in each figure indicate how many pairs of vertices are interleaved; dashed lines indicate how the rest of the curve connects. The variable  $w$  shown in the  $0\rightarrow 1$  move column represents the winding number of the vertex.

As we have mentioned in Chapter 3, Arnold [15, 16] originally defined the curve invariants  $St$  and  $J^+$  by their changes under  $2\rightarrow 0$  and  $3\rightarrow 3$  homotopy moves. Specifically, as shown in Figure 4.1,  $3\rightarrow 3$  moves change strangeness by  $\pm 1$  but do not affect  $J^+$ ;  $2\rightarrow 0$  moves change  $J^+$  by either 0 or 2 but do not affect strangeness.

Defect bound from either Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1 implies the following lower bound on number of homotopy moves, which is also implicit in the work of Hayashi *et al.* [139] and Even-Zohar *et al.* [95].

**Theorem 4.1.** *For every positive integer  $n$ , there are closed curves with  $n$  vertices whose defects are  $n^{3/2}/3 - O(n)$  and  $-n^{3/2}/3 + O(n)$ , and therefore require at least  $n^{3/2}/6 - O(n)$  homotopy moves to reduce to a simple closed curve.*

**Proof:** The lower bound follows from Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1 by setting  $a := 1$ . If  $n$  is a perfect square, then the flat torus knot  $T(\sqrt{n} + 1, \sqrt{n})$  has  $n$  vertices and defect  $-2(\frac{\sqrt{n}}{3})$ . If  $n$  is not a perfect square, we can achieve defect  $-2(\frac{\lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor}{3})$  by applying  $0\rightarrow 1$  moves to the curve  $T(\lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor + 1, \lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor)$ . Similarly, we obtain an  $n$ -vertex curve with defect  $2(\frac{\lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor + 1}{3})$  by adding monogons to the curve  $T(\lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor, \lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor + 1)$ . Lemma 4.1 now immediately implies the lower bound on homotopy moves.  $\square$

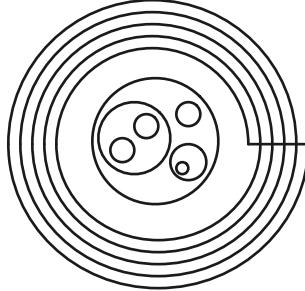
### 4.1.1 Multicurves

Our previous results immediately imply that simplifying a multicurve with  $n$  vertices requires at least  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves; in this section we derive additional lower bounds in terms of the number of constituent curves. We distinguish between two natural variants of simplification: transforming a multicurve into an *arbitrary* set of disjoint simple closed curves, or into a *particular* set of disjoint simple closed curves.

**Lemma 4.2.** *Transforming a  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices in the plane into  $k$  arbitrary disjoint circles requires  $\Omega(nk)$  homotopy moves in the worst case.*

**Proof:** For arbitrary positive integers  $n$  and  $k$ , we construct a multicurve with  $k$  disjoint constituent curves, all but one of which are simple, as follows. The first  $k - 1$  constituent curves  $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{k-1}$  are disjoint circles inside the

open unit disk centered at the origin. (The precise configuration of these circles is unimportant.) The remaining constituent curve  $\gamma_o$  is a spiral winding  $n + 1$  times around the closed unit disk centered at the origin, plus a line segment connecting the endpoints of the spiral;  $\gamma_o$  is the simplest possible curve with winding number  $n + 1$  around the origin. Let  $\gamma$  be the disjoint union of these  $k$  curves; we claim that  $\Omega(nk)$  homotopy moves are required to simplify  $\gamma$ . See Figure 4.2.



**Figure 4.2.** Simplifying this multicurve requires  $\Omega(nk)$  homotopy moves.

Consider the faces of the outer curve  $\gamma_o$  during any homotopy of  $\gamma$ . Adjacent faces of  $\gamma_o$  have winding numbers that differ by 1, and the outer face has winding number 0. Thus, for any non-negative integer  $w$ , as long as the maximum absolute winding number  $|\max_p \text{wind}(\gamma_o, p)|$  is at least  $w$ , the curve  $\gamma_o$  has at least  $w + 1$  faces (including the outer face) and therefore at least  $w - 1$  vertices, by Euler's formula. On the other hand, if any curve  $\gamma_i$  intersects a face of  $\gamma_o$ , no homotopy move can remove that face until the intersection between  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_o$  is removed. Thus, before the simplification of  $\gamma_o$  is complete, each curve  $\gamma_i$  must intersect only faces with winding number 0, 1, or  $-1$ .

For each index  $i$ , let  $w_i$  denote the maximum absolute winding number of  $\gamma_o$  around any point of  $\gamma_i$ :

$$w_i := \max_{\theta} |\text{wind}(\gamma_o, \gamma_i(\theta))|.$$

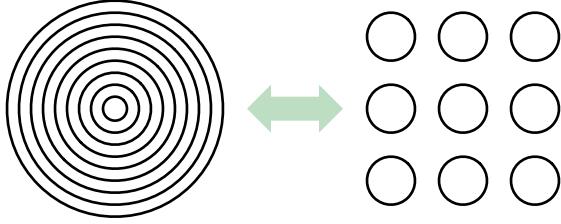
Let  $W := \sum_i w_i$ . Initially,  $W = k(n + 1)$ , and when  $\gamma_o$  first becomes simple, we must have  $W \leq k$ . Each homotopy move changes  $W$  by at most 1; specifically, at most one term  $w_i$  changes at all, and that term either increases or decreases by 1. The  $\Omega(nk)$  lower bound now follows immediately.  $\square$

**Theorem 4.2.** *Transforming a  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices in the plane into an arbitrary set of  $k$  simple closed curves requires  $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk)$  homotopy moves in the worst case.*

We say that a collection of  $k$  disjoint simple closed curves is **nested** if some point lies in the interior of every curve, and **unnested** if the curves have disjoint interiors.

**Lemma 4.3.** *Transforming  $k$  nested circles in the plane into  $k$  unnested circles requires  $\Omega(k^2)$  homotopy moves.*

**Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  be two nested circles, with  $\gamma'$  in the interior of  $\gamma$  and with  $\gamma$  directed counterclockwise. Suppose we apply an arbitrary homotopy to these two curves. If the curves remain disjoint during the entire homotopy, then  $\gamma'$  always lies inside a face of  $\gamma$  with winding number 1; in short, the two curves remain nested. Thus, any sequence of homotopy moves that takes  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  to two non-nested simple closed curves contains at least one  $0 \rightarrow 2$  move that makes the curves cross (and symmetrically at least one  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move that makes them disjoint again).



**Figure 4.3.** Nesting or unnesting  $k$  circles requires  $\Omega(k^2)$  homotopy moves.

1133 Consider a set of  $k$  nested circles. Each of the  $\binom{k}{2}$  pairs of circles requires at least one  $0 \rightarrow 2$  move and one  $2 \rightarrow 0$   
 1134 move to unnest. Because these moves involve distinct pairs of curves, at least  $\binom{k}{2} 0 \rightarrow 2$  moves and  $\binom{k}{2} 2 \rightarrow 0$  moves,  
 1135 and thus at least  $k^2 - k$  moves altogether, are required to unnest every pair.  $\square$

1136 **Theorem 4.3.** *Transforming a  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices in the plane into  $k$  nested (or unnested) circles requires  
 1137  $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$  homotopy moves in the worst case.*

1138 **Corollary 4.1.** *Transforming one  $k$ -curve with at most  $n$  vertices into another  $k$ -curve with at most  $n$  vertices  
 1139 requires  $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$  homotopy moves in the worst case.*

1140 Although our lower bound examples consist of disjoint curves, all of these lower bounds apply without  
 1141 modification to *connected* multicurves, because any  $k$ -curve can be connected with at most  $k - 1$   $0 \rightarrow 2$  moves.  
 1142 On the other hand, any connected  $k$ -curve has at least  $2k - 2$  vertices, so the  $\Omega(k^2)$  terms in Theorem 4.3 and  
 1143 Corollary 4.1 are redundant.

## 1144 4.2 Quadratic Bound for Curves on Surfaces

1145 In this section we consider the natural generalization of the defect invariant to closed curves on orientable surfaces  
 1146 of higher genus. Because these surfaces have non-trivial topology, not every closed curve is homotopic to a single  
 1147 point or even to a simple curve.

1148 Although defect was originally defined as an invariant of *plane* curves, Polyak's formula

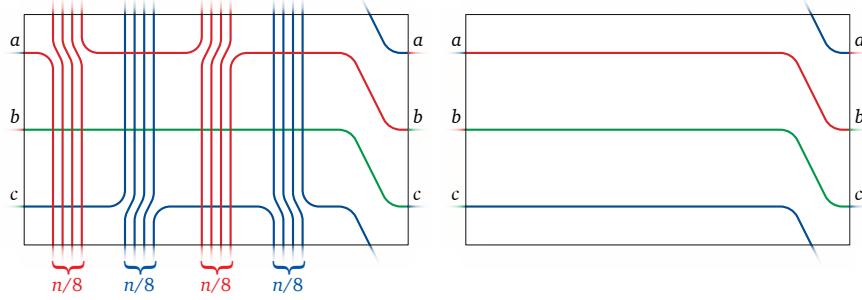
$$1149 \text{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{x \pitchfork y} \text{sgn}(x) \text{sgn}(y)$$

1150 extends naturally to closed curves on any orientable surface; homotopy moves change the invariant exactly as  
 1151 described in Figure 4.1. Thus, Lemma 4.1 immediately generalizes to any orientable surface as follows.

1152 **Lemma 4.4.** *Let  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  be arbitrary closed curves that are homotopic on an arbitrary orientable surface.  
 1153 Transforming  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma'$  requires at least  $|\text{defect}(\gamma) - \text{defect}(\gamma')|/2$  homotopy moves.*

1154 In contrast to Theorem 3.1, the following construction gives toroidal curves with quadratic defect, implying a  
 1155 quadratic lower bound for tightening non-contractible curves on orientable surfaces with positive genus.

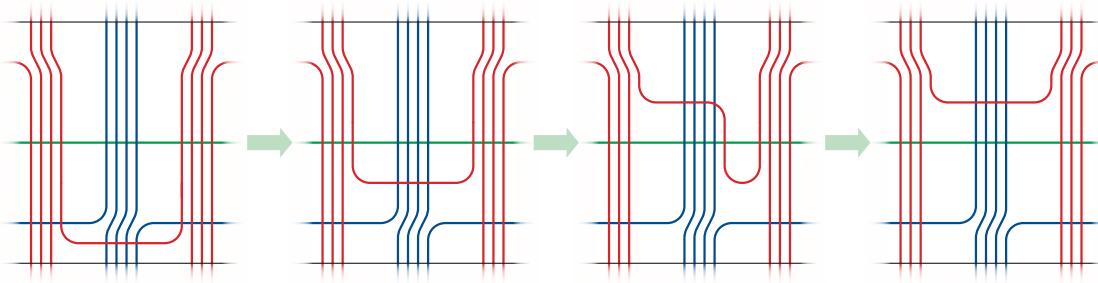
1156 **Lemma 4.5.** *For any positive integer  $n$ , there is a closed curve on the torus with  $n$  vertices and defect  $\Omega(n^2)$  that  
 1157 is homotopic to a simple closed curve but not contractible.*



**Figure 4.4.** A curve  $\gamma$  on the torus with defect  $\Omega(n^2)$  and a simple curve homotopic to  $\gamma$ .

1158 **Proof:** Without loss of generality, suppose  $n$  is a multiple of 8. The curve  $\gamma$  is illustrated on the left in Figure 4.4.  
 1159 The torus is represented by a rectangle with opposite edges identified. We label three points  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  on the  
 1160 vertical edge of the rectangle and decompose the curve into a simple red path from  $a$  to  $b$ , a simple green path  
 1161 from  $b$  to  $c$ , and a simple blue path from  $c$  to  $a$ . The red and blue paths each wind vertically around the torus,  
 1162 first  $n/8$  times in one direction, and then  $n/8$  times in the opposite direction.

1163 As in previous proofs, we compute the defect of  $\gamma$  by describing a sequence of homotopy moves that tightens  
 1164 the curve, while carefully tracking the changes in the defect that these moves incur. We can unwind one turn of  
 1165 the red path by performing one  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move, followed by  $n/8$   $3 \rightarrow 3$  moves, followed by one  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move, as illustrated  
 1166 in Figure 4.5. Repeating this sequence of homotopy moves  $n/8$  times removes all intersections between the red  
 1167 and green paths, after which a sequence of  $n/4$   $2 \rightarrow 0$  moves straightens the blue path, yielding the simple curve  
 1168 shown on the right in Figure 4.4. Altogether, we perform  $n^2/64 + n/2$  homotopy moves, where each  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move  
 1169 increases the defect of the curve by 2 and each  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move decreases the defect of the curve by 2. We conclude  
 1170 that  $\text{defect}(\gamma) = -n^2/32 + n$ .  $\square$



**Figure 4.5.** Unwinding one turn of the red path.

1171 **Theorem 4.4.** Tightening a closed curve with  $n$  crossings on a torus requires  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves in the worst  
 1172 case, even if the curve is homotopic to a simple curve.

1173 Later in Section 4.3.2, we will describe a sequence of *contractible* closed curves on the annulus that requires  
 1174  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves to tighten through a different kind of curve invariant. Such curves must have defect  
 1175  $O(n^{3/2})$  by Theorem 3.1.

## 1176 4.3 Quadratic Bound for Contractible Curves on Surfaces

1177 We now prove a quadratic lower bound on the worst-case number of homotopy moves required to tighten closed  
1178 curves in the annulus; we extend this lower bound to more complex surfaces in Section 4.3.3. Rather than  
1179 considering the standard annulus  $S^1 \times [0, 1]$ , it will be more convenient to work in the punctured plane  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{o\}$ ,  
1180 which is homeomorphic to the open annulus  $S^1 \times (0, 1)$ ; here  $o$  is an arbitrary point, which we call the *origin*.

1181 For any homotopy in the punctured plane, homotopy moves across the face containing  $o$  are forbidden. This  
1182 makes the quadratic lower bound possible; without this restriction, any planar curve can be simplified using at  
1183 most  $O(n^{3/2})$  moves, as we will see in Section 5.1.

### 1184 4.3.1 Traces and Types

1185 To simplify the presentation, we identify the vertices before and after a 3→3 move as indicated in Figure 1.1. Each  
1186 3→3 move involves three subpaths of  $\gamma$ , which intersect in three vertices; intuitively, each of these vertices moves  
1187 continuously across the opposite subpath. Thus, in any homotopy from one curve  $\gamma$  to another curve  $\gamma'$ , each  
1188 vertex of the evolving curve either starts as a vertex of  $\gamma$  or is created by a 0→1 or 0→2 move, moves continuously  
1189 through a finite sequence of 3→3 moves, and either ends as a vertex of  $\gamma'$  or is destroyed by a 1→0 or 2→0 move.

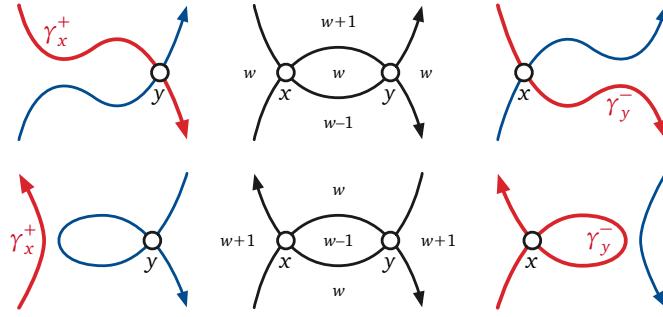
1190 Let  $H$  be a homotopy that transforms  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma'$ , represented as a finite sequence of homotopy moves. We define  
1191 a graph  $Trace(H)$ , called the *trace* of  $H$ , whose nodes are the vertices of  $\gamma$ , the vertices of  $\gamma'$ , and the 1↔0 and  
1192 2↔0 moves in  $H$ ; each edge of  $Trace(H)$  corresponds to the lifetime of a single vertex of the evolving curve. Every  
1193 node of  $Trace(H)$  has degree 1 or 2; thus,  $Trace(H)$  is the disjoint union of paths and cycles.

1194 Recall that curves  $\gamma_x^+$  and  $\gamma_x^-$  are obtained from smoothing the curve  $\gamma$  at vertex  $x$  in a way that breaks  $\gamma$  into two  
1195 closed curves, each respecting the orientation of the original. (See Figure 2.3.) We define the *type* of any vertex  $x$   
1196 of any annular curve  $\gamma$  as the winding number of the simpler curve  $\gamma_x^+$  around the origin  $o$  (*not* around the vertex  $x$ );  
1197 that is, we define  $type(\gamma, x) := wind(\gamma_x^+, o)$ . Vertex  $x$  is *irrelevant* if either  $type(\gamma, x) = 0$  or  $type(\gamma, x) = wind(\gamma, o)$   
1198 and *relevant* otherwise. Two vertices  $x$  and  $y$  have *complementary* types if  $type(\gamma, x) + type(\gamma, y) = wind(\gamma, o)$ , or  
1199 equivalently, if  $wind(\gamma_x^+, o) = wind(\gamma_y^-, o)$ . If two vertices have complementary types, then either both are relevant  
1200 or both are irrelevant.

1201 **Lemma 4.6.** *The following hold for any annular curve:*

- 1202 (1) *Each 1↔0 move creates or destroys an irrelevant vertex.*
- 1203 (2) *Each 2↔0 move creates or destroys two vertices with complementary types and identical winding numbers.*
- 1204 (3) *Each 3↔3 move changes the winding numbers of three vertices, each by exactly 1.*
- 1205 (4) *Except as stated in (1), (2), and (3), homotopy moves do not change the type or winding number of any  
1206 vertex.*

1207 **Proof:** Claim (1) is immediate. Up to symmetry, there are only two cases to consider to prove claim (2): The  
1208 two sides of the empty bigon are oriented in the same direction or in opposite directions. In both cases,  $\gamma_x^+$   
1209 and  $\gamma_y^-$  are homotopic and  $wind(\gamma, x) = wind(\gamma, y)$ , where  $x$  and  $y$  are the vertices of the bigon. See Figure 4.6.  
1210 Claim (3) follows immediately from the observation that each vertex involved in a 3→3 move passes over the curve  
1211 exactly once. Finally, claim (4) follows from the fact that winding number is a homotopy invariant; specifically,  
1212 if there is a homotopy between two planar curves  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  whose image does not include a point  $p$ , then  
1213  $wind(\gamma, p) = wind(\gamma', p)$  [142].  $\square$



**Figure 4.6.** The vertices of empty bigons have complementary types and identical winding numbers.

Lemma 4.6 implies that no homotopy move transforms a relevant vertex into an irrelevant vertex or vice versa, and that relevant vertices are neither created by  $0 \rightarrow 1$  moves nor destroyed by  $1 \rightarrow 0$  moves. Let  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$  denote the subgraph of edges in the trace graph  $\text{Trace}(H)$  that correspond to relevant vertices of the evolving curve. Again,  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$  is the disjoint union of paths and cycles. Each path in  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$  connects either two vertices of  $\gamma$  with complementary types, two vertices of  $\gamma'$  with complementary types, or a vertex of  $\gamma$  and a vertex of  $\gamma'$  with identical types. Intuitively, each path in  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$  is the record of a single relevant vertex alternately moving forward and backward in time, reversing directions and types at every  $0 \leftrightarrow 2$  move. We say that the nodes at the end of each path in  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$  are **paired** by the homotopy  $H$ . We emphasize that different homotopies may lead to different pairings.

Between  $2 \leftrightarrow 0$  moves, a relevant vertex can participate in any finite number of  $3 \rightarrow 3$  moves. By Lemma 4.6(3), each  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move changes the winding numbers of each of the three moving vertices by 1, and Lemma 4.6(4) implies that the winding number of a vertex changes only when it participates in a  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move. Thus, the homotopy  $H$  must contain at least

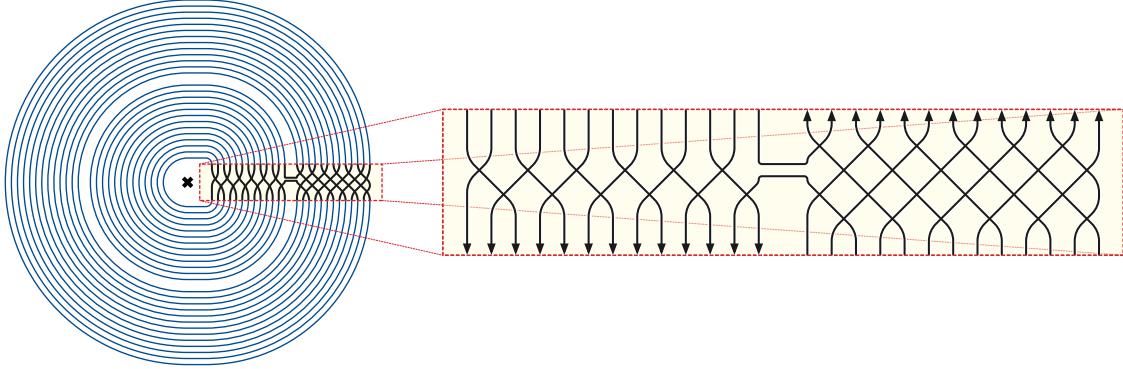
$$\frac{1}{3} \sum_{x \sim y} |wind(x) - wind(y)|$$

$3 \rightarrow 3$  moves, where the sum is over all pairs of paired vertices of  $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ , and the winding number of each vertex is defined with respect to the curve ( $\gamma$  or  $\gamma'$ ) that contains it.

### 4.3.2 A Bad Contractible Annular Curve

**Theorem 4.5.** *For any positive integer  $n$ , there is a contractible annular curve with  $n$  vertices that requires  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves to tighten.*

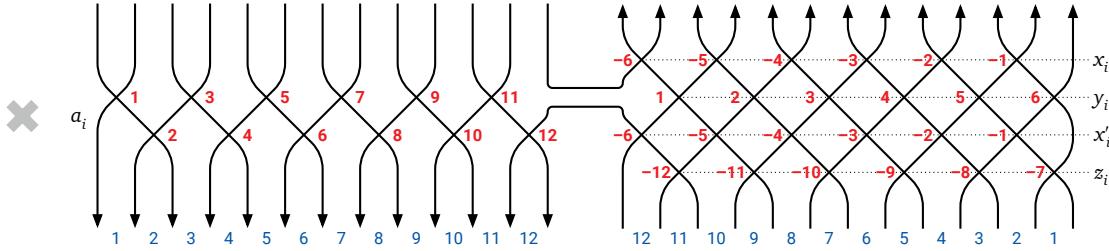
**Proof:** For any pair of relatively prime integers  $p$  and  $q$ , the *flat torus knot*  $T(p, q)$  described in Section 3.1.1 has exactly  $(|p| - 1) \cdot |q|$  vertices and winding number  $p$  around the origin. For any odd integer  $p$ , let  $\Pi_p$  denote the closed curve obtained by placing a scaled copy of  $T(-p, 1)$  inside the innermost face of  $T(p, 2)$  and attaching the two curves as shown in Figure 4.7. For purposes of illustration, we perform homotopy to move all crossings into a narrow horizontal rectangle to the right of the origin, which is also where we join the two curves. The resulting curve  $\Pi_p$  has winding number zero around the origin and thus is contractible, and it has  $3(p - 1)$  vertices. Within the rectangle (treated as a *tangle*), the curve consists of  $2p$  simple strands; the endpoints of the strands are connected by disjoint parallel paths outside the rectangle. In the left half of the rectangle, strands are directed downward; in the right half, strands are directed upward. All but two strands connect the top and bottom of the rectangle; the only exceptions are the strands that connect the two flat torus knots.



**Figure 4.7.** Our bad example curve  $\Pi_{13}$  in the punctured plane.

We catalog the vertices of  $\Pi_p$  as follows; see Figure 4.8. In the left half of the rectangle,  $\Pi_p$  has one vertex  $a_i$  with type  $i$  and winding number  $i$ , for each integer  $i$  from 1 to  $p$ . In the right half,  $\Pi_p$  has four vertices for each index  $i$  between 1 and  $(p-1)/2$ :

- two vertices  $x_i$  and  $x'_i$  with type  $-i$  and winding number  $2i$ ;
- one vertex  $y_i$  with type  $i$  and winding number  $p - 2i$ ; and
- one vertex  $z_i$  with type  $i - p$  and winding number  $p - 2i$ .



**Figure 4.8.** Vertices of  $\Pi_{13}$  annotated by type (bold red numbers next to each vertex) and winding number (thin blue numbers directly below each vertex).

Every homotopy from  $\Pi_p$  to a simple closed curve defines an essentially unique pairing of the vertices of  $\Pi_p$ ; without loss of generality,  $a_i$  is paired with  $x'_i$ ,  $a_{p-i}$  is paired with  $z_i$ , and  $x_i$  is paired with  $y_i$ , for each integer  $i$  between 1 and  $(p-1)/2$ . Thus, the number of 3→3 moves in any homotopy that contracts  $\Pi_p$  is at least

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} (|i - 2i| + |(p - i) - (p - 2i)| + |2i - (p - 2i)|) \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} (2i + |4i - p|) = \frac{1}{3} \left( \sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} 2i + \sum_{j=1}^{(p-1)/2} (2j + 1) \right) = \frac{p(p-1)}{6}. \end{aligned}$$

This completes the proof. □

### 4.3.3 More Complicated Surfaces

We extend Theorem 4.5 to surfaces with more complex topology as follows. A closed curve in any surface  $\Sigma$  is **two-sided** if it has a neighborhood homeomorphic to the annulus. Let  $\Sigma$  be a compact surface, possibly with

boundary or non-orientable, that contains a simple two-sided non-contractible cycle  $\alpha$ ; the only compact surfaces that do *not* contain such a cycle are the sphere, the disk, and the projective plane. To create a bad example curve for  $\Sigma$ , we simply embed our previous annular curve  $\Pi_p$  in an annular neighborhood  $A$  of  $\alpha$ . The resulting curves are still contractible in  $\Sigma$  and, as we will shortly prove, still require  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves to simplify.

However, winding numbers are not well-defined in surfaces of higher genus, so we need a more careful argument to prove the quadratic lower bound. Instead of reasoning directly about homotopy moves on  $\Sigma$ , we lift everything to a certain covering space of  $\Sigma$  previously considered by several authors [64, 87, 135, 161, 217].

**Theorem 4.6.** *Let  $\Sigma$  be a compact connected surface, possibly with boundary or non-orientable (but not the sphere, the disk, or the projective plane). For any positive integer  $n$ , there is a contractible curve with  $n$  vertices in  $\Sigma$  that requires  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves to simplify.*

**Proof:** Let  $\alpha$  be a simple two-sided non-contractible closed curve in  $\Sigma$ , that is, a non-contractible curve that lies in an open neighborhood  $A$  homeomorphic to the open annulus  $S^1 \times (0, 1)$ . Every compact connected surface (other than the sphere, the disk, or the projective plane) contains such a curve.

The **cyclic covering space**  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$  of  $\Sigma$  with respect to  $\alpha$  is the quotient of the universal covering space of  $\Sigma$  by the infinite-cyclic subgroup of the fundamental group  $\pi_1(\Sigma)$  generated by  $\alpha$ . Let  $\pi: \hat{\Sigma}_\alpha \rightarrow \Sigma$  be the corresponding covering map. Standard covering space results imply that  $\alpha$  has a unique lift  $\hat{\alpha}$  to  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$  that is a simple closed curve. Also,  $\hat{\alpha}$  has an open annular neighborhood  $\hat{A}$  with non-contractible boundary components in  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Moreover, we may assume that the restriction of the covering map  $\pi$  to  $\hat{A}$  is a homeomorphism to  $A$ .

Let  $\hat{\gamma}$  be an arbitrary contractible curve in  $\hat{A}$ , and let  $\gamma$  be the projection of  $\hat{\gamma}$  to  $A$ . The two curves  $\gamma$  and  $\hat{\gamma}$  have the same number of vertices and edges. By homotopy lifting property, any homotopy  $H: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$  from  $\gamma$  to a point lifts to a homotopy  $\hat{H}: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$  from  $\hat{\gamma}$  to a point. Each homotopy move in  $\hat{H}$  projects to a homotopy move in  $H$ , but  $H$  may include additional homotopy moves, where the strands involved are projected from different parts of the covering space. It follows that simplifying  $\gamma$  in  $\Sigma$  requires at least as many homotopy moves as simplifying  $\hat{\gamma}$  in  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ .

Standard covering space results imply that the interior of  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$  is homeomorphic to an open annulus, and therefore to the punctured plane  $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{o\}$ . (See, for example, Schrijver [217, Proposition 2].) The lower bound now follows directly from Theorem 4.5, by setting  $\hat{\gamma} := \Pi_p$  for some  $p = \Theta(n)$ , as defined in Section 4.3.2. If  $\Sigma$  has non-empty boundary, then  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$  also has non-empty boundary, but without loss of generality, any homotopy that contracts  $\hat{\gamma}$  avoids the boundary of  $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ .  $\square$

Theorem 4.6 strengthens the  $\Omega(n^2)$  lower bound in Section 4.2 for tightening non-contractible curves in orientable surfaces. Results of Hass and Scott [135, Theorem 2.7] imply that our lower bound is tight for the Möbius band, the Klein bottle, and any orientable surface except the sphere or the disk; any contractible curve on these surfaces can be simplified using at most  $O(n^2)$  homotopy moves.

The only missing case is the projective plane; see Section 8.2 for a discussion.



# Chapter 5

## Tightening Planar Curves

1294

*I used to love to untangle chains when I was a child. I had thin, busy fingers, and I never gave up. Perhaps there was a psychiatric component to my concentration but like much of my psychic damage, this worked to everyone's advantage.*

— Anne Lamott, *Plan B: Further Thoughts on Faith*

1295

We develop a new algorithm to simplify any closed curve in the plane in  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves in Section 5.1. First we describe an algorithm that uses  $O(D\Sigma)$  moves, where  $D\Sigma$  is the sum of the face depths of the input curve. At a high level, our algorithm can be viewed as a variant of Steinitz’s algorithm that empties and removes *monogons* instead of bigons. We then extend our algorithm to *tangles*: collections of boundary-to-boundary paths in a closed disk. Our algorithm tightens a tangle in  $O(D\Sigma + ns)$  moves, where  $D\Sigma$  is the sum of the depths of the tangle’s faces,  $s$  is the number of strands, and  $n$  is the number of intersection points. Using the result from Section 3.2.3, we can find a simple closed curve whose interior tangle has  $m$  vertices, at most  $\sqrt{m}$  strands, and maximum face depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ . Tightening this tangle and then recursively simplifying the resulting curve requires a total of  $O(n^{3/2})$  moves. We show that this simplifying sequence of homotopy moves can be computed in  $O(1)$  amortized time per move, assuming the curve is presented in an appropriate graph data structure. We conclude this chapter by proving that any arrangement of  $k$  closed curves can be simplified in  $O(n^{3/2} + nk)$  homotopy moves, or in  $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$  homotopy moves if the target configuration is specified in advance, precisely matching our lower bounds for all values of  $n$  and  $k$ .

1308

### 5.1 Planar Curves

1309

#### 5.1.1 Contracting Simple Loops

1310 **Lemma 5.1.** *Every closed curve  $\gamma$  in the plane can be simplified using at most  $3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3$  homotopy moves.*

1311

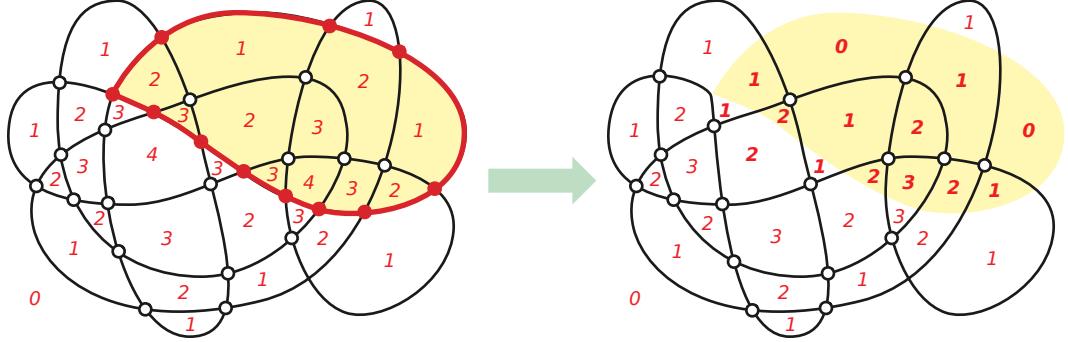
**Proof:** We prove the statement by induction on the number of vertices in  $\gamma$ . The lemma is trivial if  $\gamma$  is already simple, so assume otherwise. Let  $x := \gamma(\theta) = \gamma(\theta')$  be the first vertex to be visited twice by  $\gamma$  after the (arbitrarily chosen) basepoint  $\gamma(0)$ . Let  $\alpha$  denote the subpath of  $\gamma$  from  $\gamma(\theta)$  to  $\gamma(\theta')$ ; our choice of  $x$  implies that  $\alpha$  is a simple monogon. Let  $m$  and  $s$  denote the number of vertices and strands in the interior tangle of  $\alpha$ , respectively.

1315

Finally, let  $\gamma'$  denote the closed curve obtained from  $\gamma$  by removing  $\alpha$ . The first stage of our algorithm transforms  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma'$  by contracting the monogon  $\alpha$  via homotopy moves.

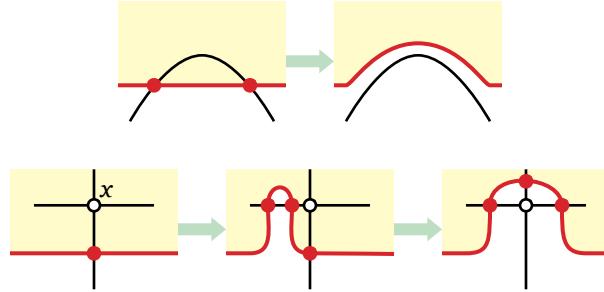
1317

We remove the vertices and edges from the interior of  $\alpha$  one at a time as follows; see Figure 5.2. If we can perform a  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move to remove one edge of  $\gamma$  from the interior of  $\alpha$  and decrease  $s$ , we do so. Otherwise, either  $\alpha$  is empty, or some vertex of  $\gamma$  lies inside  $\alpha$ . In the latter case, at least one vertex  $x$  inside  $\alpha$  has a neighbor that lies on  $\alpha$ . We move  $x$  outside  $\alpha$  with a  $0 \rightarrow 2$  move (which increases  $s$  by 1) followed by a  $3 \rightarrow 3$  move (which decreases  $m$  by 1). Once  $\alpha$  is an empty monogon, we remove it with a single  $1 \rightarrow 0$  move. Altogether, our algorithm



**Figure 5.1.** Transforming  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma'$  by contracting a simple monogon. Numbers are face depths.

transforms  $\gamma$  into  $\gamma'$  using at most  $3m + s + 1$  homotopy moves. Let  $M$  denote the actual number of homotopy moves used.



**Figure 5.2.** Moving a monogon over an interior empty bigon or an interior vertex.

Euler's formula implies that  $\alpha$  contains exactly  $m + s + 1$  faces of  $\gamma$ . The Jordan curve theorem implies that  $\text{depth}(p, \gamma') \leq \text{depth}(p, \gamma) - 1$  for any point  $p$  inside  $\alpha$ , and trivially  $\text{depth}(p, \gamma') \leq \text{depth}(p, \gamma)$  for any point  $p$  outside  $\alpha$ . It follows that  $D\Sigma(\gamma') \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) - (m + s + 1) \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) - M/3$ , and therefore  $M \leq 3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3D\Sigma(\gamma')$ . The induction hypothesis implies that we can recursively simplify  $\gamma'$  using at most  $3D\Sigma(\gamma') - 3$  moves. The lemma now follows immediately.  $\square$

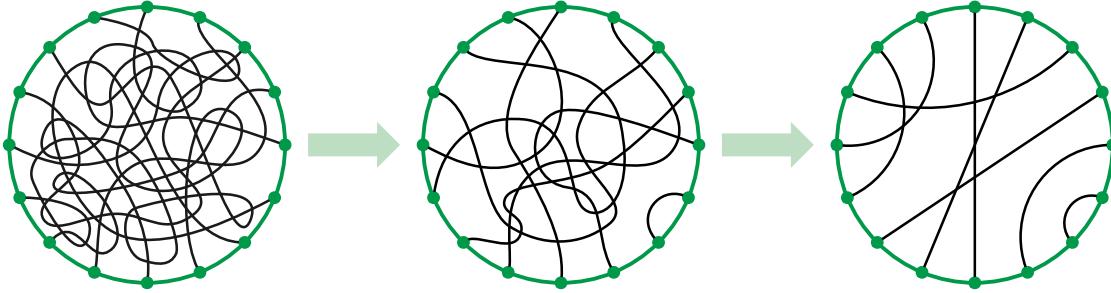
Our upper bound is a factor of 3 larger than Feo and Provan's [100]; however our algorithm has the advantage that it extends to *tangles*, as described in the next subsection.

### 5.1.2 Tangles

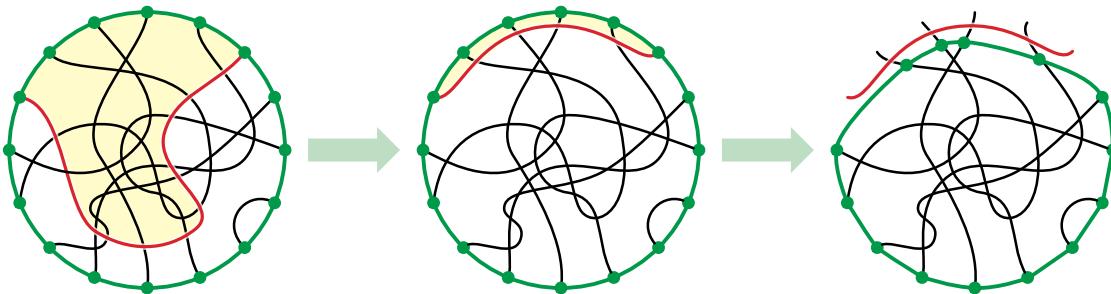
Recall that a tangle is *tight* if every pair of strands intersects at most once and *loose* otherwise. Every loose tangle contains either an empty monogon or a (not necessarily empty) bigon. Thus, any tangle with  $n$  vertices can be transformed into a tight tangle—or less formally, *tightened*—in  $O(n^2)$  homotopy moves using Steinitz's algorithm. On the other hand, there are infinite classes of loose tangles for which no homotopy move that decreases the potential, so we cannot directly apply Feo and Provan's algorithm to this setting. (See Section 8.1.1).

We describe a two-phase algorithm to tighten any tangle. First, we remove any self-intersections in the individual strands, by contracting monogons as in the proof of Lemma 5.1. Once each strand is simple, we move the strands so that each pair intersects at most once. See Figure 5.3.

**Lemma 5.2.** *Every  $n$ -vertex tangle  $\oplus$  with  $s$  simple strands can be tightened using at most  $3ns$  homotopy moves.*



**Figure 5.3.** Tightening a tangle in two phases: First simplifying the individual strands, then removing excess crossings between pairs of strands.



**Figure 5.4.** Moving one strand out of the way and shrinking the tangle boundary.

1341 **Proof:** We prove the lemma by induction on  $s$ . The base case when  $s = 1$  is trivial, so assume  $s \geq 2$ .

1342 Fix an arbitrary reference point on the boundary circle  $\sigma$  that is not an endpoint of a strand. For each index  $i$ ,  
 1343 let  $\sigma_i$  be the arc of  $\sigma$  between the endpoints of  $\gamma_i$  that does not contain the reference point. A strand  $\gamma_i$  is *extremal*  
 1344 if the corresponding arc  $\sigma_i$  does not contain any other arc  $\sigma_j$ .

1345 Choose an arbitrary extremal strand  $\gamma_i$ . Let  $m_i$  denote the number of tangle vertices in the interior of the disk  
 1346 bounded by  $\gamma_i$  and the boundary arc  $\sigma_i$ ; call this disk  $\Sigma_i$ . Let  $s_i$  denote the number of intersections between  $\gamma_i$   
 1347 and other strands. Finally, let  $\gamma'_i$  be a path inside the disk  $\Sigma$  defining tangle  $\Theta$ , with the same endpoints as  $\gamma_i$ , that  
 1348 intersects each other strand in  $\Theta$  at most once, such that the disk bounded by  $\sigma_i$  and  $\gamma'_i$  has no tangle vertices  
 1349 inside its interior. (See Figure 5.4 for an example; the red strand in the left tangle is  $\gamma_i$ , the red strand in the  
 1350 middle tangle is  $\gamma'_i$ , and the shaded disk is  $\Sigma_i$ .)

1351 We can deform  $\gamma_i$  into  $\gamma'_i$  using essentially the algorithm from Lemma 5.1; the disk  $\Sigma_i$  is contracted along  
 1352 with  $\gamma_i$  in the process. If  $\Sigma_i$  contains an empty bigon with one side in  $\gamma_i$ , remove it with a  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move (which  
 1353 decreases  $s_i$  by 1). If  $\Sigma_i$  has an interior vertex with a neighbor on  $\gamma_i$ , remove it using at most two homotopy  
 1354 moves (which increases  $s_i$  by 1 and decreases  $m_i$  by 1). Altogether, this deformation requires at most  $3m_i + s_i \leq 3n$   
 1355 homotopy moves.

1356 After deforming  $\gamma_i$  to  $\gamma'_i$ , we redefine the tangle by shrinking its boundary curve slightly to exclude  $\gamma'_i$ , without  
 1357 creating or removing any vertices in the tangle or endpoints on the boundary; see the right of Figure 5.4. We  
 1358 emphasize that shrinking the boundary does not modify the strands and therefore does not require any homotopy  
 1359 moves. The resulting smaller tangle has exactly  $s - 1$  strands, each of which is simple. Thus, the induction  
 1360 hypothesis implies that we can recursively tighten this smaller tangle using at most  $3n(s - 1)$  homotopy moves.  $\square$

**Corollary 5.1.** Every  $n$ -vertex  $s$ -strand tangle  $\Theta$  can be tightened using at most  $3D\Sigma(\Theta) + 3ns$  homotopy moves.

1361 **Proof:** As long as  $\Theta$  contains at least one non-simple strand, we identify a simple monogon  $\alpha$  in that strand and

remove it as described in the proof of Lemma 5.1. Suppose there are  $m$  vertices and  $t$  strands in the interior tangle of  $\alpha$ , and let  $M$  be the number of homotopy moves required to remove  $\alpha$ . The algorithm in the proof of Lemma 5.1 implies that  $M \leq 3m + t + 1$ , and Euler's formula implies that  $\alpha$  contains  $m + t + 1 \geq M/3$  faces. Removing  $\alpha$  decreases the depth of each of these faces by at least 1 and therefore decreases the potential of the tangle by at least  $M/3$ .

Let  $\Phi'$  be the remaining tangle after all such monogons are removed. Our potential analysis for a single monogon implies inductively that transforming  $\Phi$  into  $\Phi'$  requires at most  $3D\Sigma(\Phi) - 3D\Sigma(\Phi') \leq 3D\Sigma(\Phi)$  homotopy moves. Because  $\Phi'$  still has  $s$  strands and at most  $n$  vertices, Lemma 5.2 implies that we can tighten  $\Phi'$  with at most  $3ns$  additional homotopy moves.  $\square$

### 5.1.3 Main Algorithm

Our main algorithm repeatedly finds a useful closed curve using Lemma 3.10 whose interior tangle has depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , and tightens its interior tangle; if there are no useful closed curves, then we fall back to the monogon-contraction algorithm of Lemma 5.1.

**Theorem 5.1.** *Every closed curve in the plane with  $n$  vertices can be simplified in  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves.*

**Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary closed curve in the plane with  $n$  vertices. If  $\gamma$  has depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$ , Lemma 5.1 and the trivial upper bound  $D\Sigma(\gamma) \leq (n+1) \cdot \text{depth}(\gamma)$  imply that we can simplify  $\gamma$  in  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves. For purposes of analysis, we charge  $O(\sqrt{n})$  of these moves to each vertex of  $\gamma$ .

Otherwise, let  $\sigma$  be an arbitrary useful closed curve chosen according to Lemma 3.10. Suppose the interior tangle of  $\sigma$  has  $m$  vertices,  $s$  strands, and depth  $d$ . Lemma 3.10 implies that  $d = O(\sqrt{n})$ , and the definition of useful implies that  $s \leq \sqrt{m}$ , which is  $O(\sqrt{n})$ . Thus, by Corollary 5.1, we can tighten the interior tangle of  $\sigma$  in  $O(md + ms) = O(m\sqrt{n})$  moves. This simplification removes at least  $m - s^2/2 \geq \Omega(m)$  vertices from  $\gamma$ , as the resulting tight tangle has at most  $s^2/2$  vertices. Again, for purposes of analysis, we charge  $O(\sqrt{n})$  moves to each deleted vertex. We then recursively simplify the resulting closed curve.

In either case, each vertex of  $\gamma$  is charged  $O(\sqrt{n})$  moves as it is deleted. Thus, simplification requires at most  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves in total.  $\square$

The bound in Theorem 5.1 is asymptotically optimal as it matches the lower bound in Theorem 4.1 up to constant factors. As an immediate corollary of Theorem 5.1 and Theorem 7.2, we obtain an alternative proof to the subquadratic defect upper bound in Section 3.2.

### 5.1.4 Efficient Implementation

Here we describe how to implement our curve-simplification algorithm to run in  $O(n^{3/2})$  time; in fact, our implementation spends only constant amortized time per homotopy move. We assume that the input curve is given in a data structure that allows fast exploration and modification of plane graphs, such as a quad-edge data structure [130] or a doubly-connected edge list [22]. If the curve is presented as a polygon with  $m$  edges, an appropriate graph representation can be constructed in  $O(m \log m + n)$  time using classical geometric algorithms [55, 60, 180]; more recent algorithms can be used for piecewise-algebraic curves [83].

**Theorem 5.2.** *Given a simple closed curve  $\gamma$  in the plane with  $n$  vertices, we can compute a sequence of  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves that simplifies  $\gamma$  in amortized constant time per move.*

1400 **Proof:** We begin by labeling each face of  $\gamma$  with its depth, using a breadth-first search of the dual graph in  $O(n)$   
 1401 time. Then we construct the depth contours of  $\gamma$ —the boundaries of the regions  $\tilde{R}_j$  from the proof of Lemma  
 1402 [3.10](#)—and organize them into a *contour tree* in  $O(n)$  time by brute force. Another  $O(n)$ -time breadth-first traversal  
 1403 computes the number of strands and the number of interior vertices of every contour’s interior tangle; in particular,  
 1404 we identify which depth contours are useful. To complete the preprocessing phase, we place all the leafmost useful  
 1405 contours into a queue. We can charge the overall  $O(n)$  preprocessing time to the  $\Omega(n)$  homotopy moves needed to  
 1406 simplify the curve.

1407 As long as the queue of leafmost useful contours is non-empty, we extract one contour  $\sigma$  from this queue and  
 1408 simplify its interior tangle  $\Theta$  as follows. Suppose  $\Theta$  has  $m$  interior vertices.

1409 Following the proof of [Theorem 5.1](#), we first simplify every monogon in each strand of  $\Theta$ . We identify monogons  
 1410 by traversing the strand from one endpoint to the other, marking the vertices as we go; the first time we visit a  
 1411 vertex that has already been marked, we have found a monogon  $\alpha$ . We can perform each of the homotopy moves  
 1412 required to shrink  $\alpha$  in  $O(1)$  time, because each such move modifies only a constant-radius boundary of a vertex  
 1413 on  $\alpha$ . After the monogon is shrunk, we continue walking along the strand starting at the most recently marked  
 1414 vertex.

1415 The second phase of the tangle-simplification algorithm proceeds similarly. We walk around the boundary  
 1416 of  $\Theta$ , marking vertices as we go. As soon as we see the second endpoint of any strand  $\gamma_i$ , we pause the walk to  
 1417 straighten  $\gamma_i$ . As before, we can execute each homotopy move used to move  $\gamma_i$  to  $\gamma'_i$  in  $O(1)$  time. We then move  
 1418 the boundary of the tangle over the vertices of  $\gamma'_i$ , and remove the endpoints of  $\gamma'_i$  from the boundary curve, in  
 1419  $O(1)$  time per vertex.

1420 The only portions of the running time that we have not already charged to homotopy moves are the time  
 1421 spent marking the vertices on each strand and the time to update the tangle boundary after moving a strand aside.  
 1422 Altogether, the uncharged time is  $O(m)$ , which is less than the number of moves used to tighten  $\Theta$ , because the  
 1423 contour  $\sigma$  is useful. Thus, tightening the interior tangle of a useful contour requires  $O(1)$  amortized time per  
 1424 homotopy move.

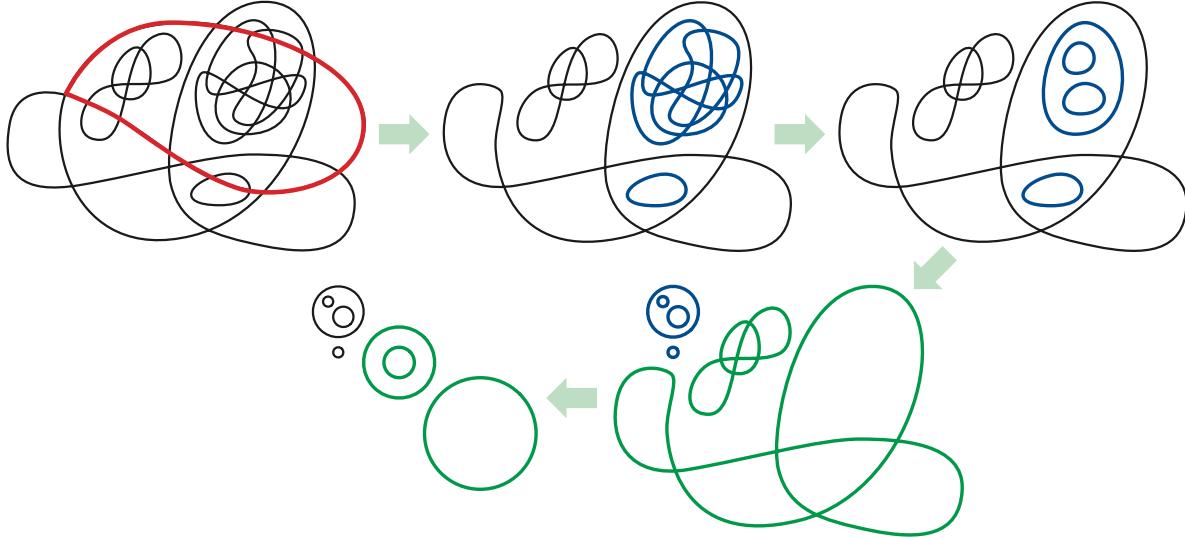
1425 Once the tangle is tight, we must update the queue of useful contours. The original contour  $\sigma$  is still a depth  
 1426 contour in the modified curve, and tightening  $\Theta$  only changes the depths of faces that intersect  $\Theta$ . Thus, we could  
 1427 update the contour tree in  $O(m)$  time, which we could charge to the moves used to tighten  $\Theta$ ; but in fact, this  
 1428 update is unnecessary, because no contour in the interior of  $\sigma$  is useful. We then walk up the contour tree from  $\sigma$ ,  
 1429 updating the number of interior vertices until we find a useful ancestor contour. The total time spent traversing  
 1430 the contour tree for new useful contours is  $O(n)$ ; we can charge this time to the  $\Omega(n)$  moves needed to simplify  
 1431 the curve.  $\square$

## 5.2 Planar Multicurves

1433 Finally, we describe how to extend our  $O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound to multicurves in the plane. Just as in [Section 4.1.1](#),  
 1434 we distinguish between two variants, depending on whether the target of the simplification is an *arbitrary* set  
 1435 of disjoint cycles or a *particular* set of disjoint cycles. In both cases, our upper bounds match the lower bounds  
 1436 proved in [Section 4.1.1](#).

1437 First we extend our monogon-contraction algorithm from [Lemma 5.1](#) to the multicurve setting. Recall that a  
 1438 *component* of a multicurve  $\gamma$  is any multicurve whose image is a component of the image of  $\gamma$ , and the individual  
 1439 closed curves that comprise  $\gamma$  are its *constituent curves*. The main difficulty is that one component of the multicurve

1440 might lie inside a face of another component, making progress on the larger component impossible. To handle  
 1441 this potential obstacle, we simplify the *innermost* components of the multicurve first, and we move isolated simple  
 1442 closed curves toward the outer face as quickly as possible. Figure 5.5 sketches the basic steps of our algorithm  
 1443 when the input multicurve is connected.



**Figure 5.5.** Simplifying a connected multicurve: shrink an arbitrary simple monogon or cycle, recursively simplify any inner components, translate inner circle clusters to the outer face, and recursively simplify the remaining non-simple components.

1444 **Lemma 5.3.** Every  $n$ -vertex  $k$ -curve  $\gamma$  in the plane can be transformed into  $k$  disjoint simple closed curves using  
 1445 at most  $3D\Sigma(\gamma) + 4nk$  homotopy moves.

1446 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices. If  $\gamma$  is connected, we either contract and delete a monogon,  
 1447 exactly as in Lemma 5.1, or we contract a simple constituent curve to an isolated circle, using essentially the  
 1448 same algorithm. In either case, the number of moves performed is at most  $3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3D\Sigma(\gamma')$ , where  $\gamma'$  is the  
 1449 multicurve after the contraction. The lemma now follows immediately by induction.

1450 We call a component of  $\gamma$  an **outer component** if it is incident to the unbounded outer face of  $\gamma$ , and an **inner**  
 1451 **component** otherwise. If  $\gamma$  has more than one outer component, we partition  $\gamma$  into subpaths, each consisting  
 1452 of one outer component  $\gamma_o$  and all inner components located inside faces of  $\gamma_o$ , and we recursively simplify  
 1453 each subpath independently; the lemma follows by induction. If any outer component is simple, we ignore that  
 1454 component and simplify the rest of  $\gamma$  recursively; again, the lemma follows by induction.

1455 Thus, we can assume without loss of generality that our multicurve  $\gamma$  is disconnected but has only one outer  
 1456 component  $\gamma_o$ , which is non-simple. For each face  $f$  of  $\gamma_o$ , let  $\gamma_f$  denote the union of all components inside  $f$ .  
 1457 Let  $n_f$  and  $k_f$  respectively denote the number of vertices and constituent curves of  $\gamma_f$ . Similarly, let  $n_o$  and  $k_o$   
 1458 respectively denote the number of vertices and constituent curves of the outer component  $\gamma_o$ .

1459 We first recursively simplify each subpath  $\gamma_f$ ; let  $\kappa_f$  denote the resulting *cluster* of  $k_f$  simple closed curves. By  
 1460 the induction hypothesis, this simplification requires at most  $3D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + 4n_f k_f$  homotopy moves. We *translate*  
 1461 each cluster  $\kappa_f$  to the outer face of  $\gamma_o$  by shrinking  $\kappa_f$  to a small  $\varepsilon$ -ball and then moving the entire cluster along  
 1462 a shortest path in the dual graph of  $\gamma_o$ . This translation requires at most  $4n_o k_f$  homotopy moves; each circle  
 1463 in  $\kappa_f$  uses one 2→0 move and one 0→2 move to cross any edge of  $\gamma_o$ , and in the worst case, the cluster might

1464 cross all  $2n_o$  edges of  $\gamma_o$ . After all circle clusters are in the outer face, we recursively simplify  $\gamma_o$  using at most  
 1465  $3D\Sigma(\gamma_o) + 4n_o k_o$  homotopy moves.

1466 The total number of homotopy moves used in this case is

$$1467 \sum_f 3D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + 3D\Sigma(\gamma_o) + \sum_f 4n_f k_f + \sum_f 4n_o k_f + 4n_o k_o.$$

1468 Each face of  $\gamma_o$  has the same depth as the corresponding face of  $\gamma$ , and for each face  $f$  of  $\gamma_o$ , each face of the  
 1469 subpath  $\gamma_f$  has lesser depth than the corresponding face of  $\gamma$ . It follows that

$$1470 \sum_f D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + D\Sigma(\gamma_o) \leq D\Sigma(\gamma).$$

1471 Similarly,  $\sum_f n_f + n_o = n$  and  $\sum_f k_f + k_o = k$ . The lemma now follows immediately.  $\square$

1472 To reduce the leading term to  $O(n^{3/2})$ , we extend the definition of a tangle to the intersection of a multicurve  $\gamma$   
 1473 with a closed disk whose boundary intersects the multicurve transversely away from its vertices, or not at all. Such  
 1474 a tangle can be decomposed into boundary-to-boundary paths, called **open** strands, and closed curves that do not  
 1475 touch the tangle boundary, called **closed** strands. Each closed strand is a constituent curve of  $\gamma$ . A tangle is **tight** if  
 1476 every strand is simple, every pair of open strands intersects at most once, and otherwise all strands are disjoint.

1477 **Theorem 5.3.** *Every  $k$ -curve in the plane with  $n$  vertices can be transformed into a set of  $k$  disjoint simple closed  
 1478 curves using  $O(n^{3/2} + nk)$  homotopy moves.*

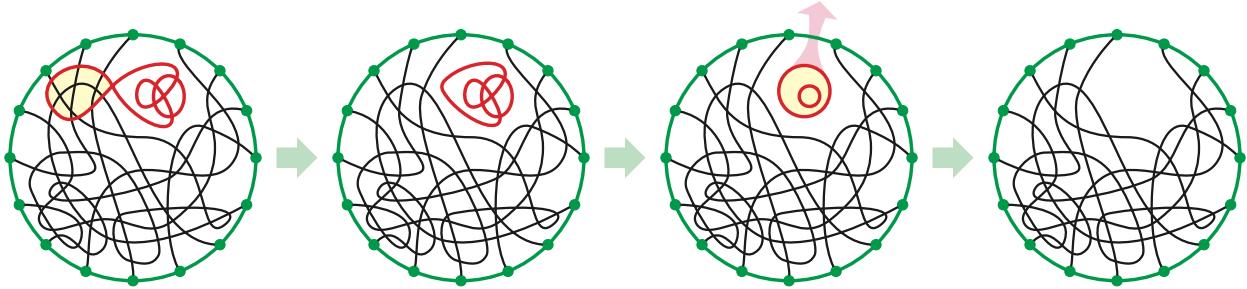
1479 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices. Following the proof of Lemma 5.3, we can assume without  
 1480 loss of generality that  $\gamma$  has a single outer component  $\gamma_o$ , which is non-simple.

1481 When  $\gamma$  is disconnected, we follow the strategy in the previous proof. Let  $\gamma_f$  denote the union of all components  
 1482 inside any face  $f$  of  $\gamma_o$ . For each face  $f$ , we recursively simplify  $\gamma_f$  and translate the resulting cluster of disjoint  
 1483 circles to the outer face; when all faces are empty, we recursively simplify  $\gamma_o$ . The theorem now follows by  
 1484 induction.

1485 When  $\gamma$  is non-simple and connected, we follow the useful closed curve strategy from Theorem 5.1. We define  
 1486 a closed curve  $\sigma$  to be useful for  $\gamma$  if the interior tangle of  $\sigma$  has its number of vertices at least the square of the  
 1487 number of *open* strands; then the proof of Lemma 3.10 applies to connected multicurves with no modifications. So  
 1488 let  $\Theta$  be a tangle with  $m$  vertices,  $s \leq \sqrt{m}$  open strands,  $\ell$  closed strands, and depth  $d = O(\sqrt{n})$ . We straighten  $\Theta$   
 1489 in two phases, almost exactly as in Section 5.1.2, contracting monogons and simple closed strands in the first  
 1490 phase, and straightening open strands in the second phase.

1491 In the first phase, contracting one monogon or simple closed strand uses at most  $3D\Sigma(\Theta) - 3D\Sigma(\Theta')$  homotopy  
 1492 moves, where  $\Theta'$  is the tangle after contraction. After each contraction, if  $\Theta'$  is disconnected—in particular, if  
 1493 we just contracted a simple closed strand—we simplify and extract any isolated components as follows. Let  $\Theta'_o$   
 1494 denote the component of  $\Theta'$  that includes the boundary cycle, and for each face  $f$  of  $\Theta'_o$ , let  $\gamma_f$  denote the union  
 1495 of all components of  $\Theta'$  inside  $f$ . We simplify each multicurve  $\gamma_f$  using the algorithm from Lemma 5.3—not  
 1496 recursively!—and then translate the resulting cluster of disjoint circles to the outer face of  $\gamma$ . See Figure 5.6.  
 1497 Altogether, simplifying and translating these subpaths requires at most  $3D\Sigma(\Theta) - 3D\Sigma(\Theta'') + 4n \sum_f k_f$  homotopy  
 1498 moves, where  $\Theta''$  is the resulting tangle.

1499 The total number of moves performed in the first phase is at most  $3D\Sigma(\Theta) + 4m\ell = O(m\sqrt{n} + nl)$ . The  
 1500 first phase ends when the tangle consists entirely of simple open strands. Thus, the second phase straightens



**Figure 5.6.** Whenever shrinking a monogon or simple closed strand disconnects the tangle, simplify each isolated component and translate the resulting cluster of circles to the outer face of the entire multicurve.

1501 the remaining open strands exactly as in the proof of Lemma 5.2; the total number of moves in this phase is  
 1502  $O(ms) = O(m\sqrt{n})$ . We charge  $O(\sqrt{n})$  time to each deleted vertex and  $O(n)$  time to each constituent curve that  
 1503 was simplified and translated outward. We then recursively simplify the remaining multicurve, ignoring any outer  
 1504 circle clusters.

1505 Altogether, each vertex of  $\gamma$  is charged  $O(\sqrt{n})$  time as it is deleted, and each constituent curve of  $\gamma$  is charged  
 1506  $O(n)$  time as it is translated outward.  $\square$

1507 With  $O(k^2)$  additional homotopy moves, we can transform the resulting set of  $k$  disjoint circles into  $k$  nested  
 1508 or unnested circles.

1509 **Theorem 5.4.** Any  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices in the plane can be transformed into  $k$  nested (or unnested) simple  
 1510 closed curves using  $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$  homotopy moves.

1511 **Corollary 5.2.** Any  $k$ -curve with at most  $n$  vertices in the plane can be transformed into any other  $k$ -curve with at  
 1512 most  $n$  vertices using  $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$  homotopy moves.

1513 Theorems 4.2 and 4.3 and Corollary 4.1 imply that these upper bounds are tight in the worst case for all  
 1514 possible values of  $n$  and  $k$ . As in the lower bounds, the  $O(k^2)$  terms are redundant for connected multicurves.

1515 More careful analysis implies that any  $k$ -curve with  $n$  vertices and depth  $d$  can be simplified in  $O(n \min\{d, n^{1/2}\} +$   
 1516  $k \min\{d, n\})$  homotopy moves, or transformed into  $k$  unnested circles using  $O(n \min\{d, n^{1/2}\} + k \min\{d, n\} +$   
 1517  $k \min\{d, k\})$  homotopy moves. Moreover, these upper bounds are tight, up to constant factors, for all possible  
 values of  $n$ ,  $k$ , and  $d$ . We leave the details of this extension as an exercise for the reader.

# Chapter 6

## Tightening Curves on Surfaces

Let bigons be bygones.

— Anna, *The Geometric Supposer: What is it a case of?*

In this chapter we prove that any  $n$ -vertex closed curve on an arbitrary orientable surface of negative Euler characteristic can be tightened in polynomially many homotopy moves. Throughout the chapter we assume the reader is familiar with fundamentals of combinatorial topology on surfaces. We refer the readers to Massey [176], Stillwell [232], and Giblin [112] for comprehensive introductions to the topic.

Our main technical contribution is to extend Steinitz’s bigon removal algorithm to *singular bigons*—bigons that wrap around the surface and overlap themselves but nevertheless have well-defined disjoint bounding paths—whose existence is guaranteed by a theorem of Hass and Scott [135, Theorem 2.7]. (A formal definition of the singular bigon can be found in Section 6.1.) To work with singular bigons, it is conceptually easier to look at a lift of the bigon in the universal cover. Unlike the case when the bigon is embedded, moving the two bounding paths of the bigon now also moves all their *translates* in the universal cover, which potentially changes the structure inside the lifted bigon. We overcome this difficulty by carefully subdividing the homotopy into phases, each performed inside a subset of the universal cover that maps injectively onto the original surface.

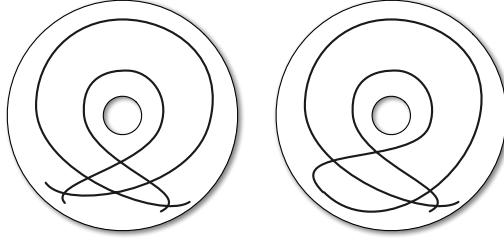
We provide two algorithms to remove singular bigons: one for orientable surface with boundary and one for those without. We consider surfaces with boundary first, not only because the bound obtained is stronger, but also because the proof is simpler and provides important intuition for the more difficult proof of the boundary-less case. The benefit of working on surface with boundary is that the fundamental group of such surface is *free*; intuitively one can always find a way to decrease the complexity of the bigon wrapping around the surface.

Our proof for surface without boundary uses a discrete analog of the classical *isoperimetric inequality* in the hyperbolic plane to bound the number of vertices inside the lifted bigon (area) in terms of the number of vertices on its boundary (perimeter). To make the presentation self-contained, we provide an elementary proof of this inequality using the combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem [18, 93, 173, 188]. The second algorithm is surprisingly complex and subtle, with multiple components and tools drawn from discrete and computational topology.

### 6.1 Singular Bigons and Singular Monogons

Here we generalize the Steinitz’s bigon removal algorithm to any closed curves on arbitrary orientable surfaces. Following Hass and Scott [135], a **singular bigon** in  $\gamma$  consists of two subpaths of  $\gamma$  that are disjoint in the domain, and the two subpaths are homotopic to each other in  $\Sigma$ . Similarly, a **singular monogon** is a subpath of  $\gamma$  whose two endpoints are identical in  $\Sigma$ , and that forms a null-homotopic closed curve in  $\Sigma$ .

Our algorithms rely on the following simple property of singular monogons and bigons, which follows immediately from their definition.



**Figure 6.1.** A basic singular bigon and a basic singular monogon in the annulus.

1549 **Lemma 6.1.** *The bounding paths of any singular monogon or bigon in  $\gamma$  cross  $\gamma$  at most  $2n$  times.*

1550 **Proof:** Any point traversing the entire curve  $\gamma$  passes through each of the  $n$  self-intersection points twice, and the  
1551 bounding paths of a singular bigon are disjoint in the domain by definition.  $\square$

1552 An important subtlety of Hass and Scott's definition is that a lift of a singular bigon to the universal cover is  
1553 not necessarily an *embedded* bigon. First, the lifted boundary paths of the bigon need not be simple or disjoint.  
1554 More subtly, the endpoints of the lifted bigon might not enclose single corners: an embedded bigon looks like a  
1555 lens  $\text{J}$ , but a lift of a singular bigon might resemble a heart  $\heartsuit$  or a butt  $\square$ . Similarly, a lift of a singular monogon  
1556 is not necessarily an *embedded* monogon; the lifted subpath might self-intersect way from its endpoint, and it may  
1557 not enclose a single corner at its endpoint.

1558 We define a singular monogon or singular bigon to be **basic** if any of its lifts on the universal cover is an  
1559 *embedded* monogon or bigon, respectively. Hass and Scott proved that any closed curve with excess intersections  
1560 on an arbitrary orientable surface, with or without boundary, must contain a singular monogon or a singular  
1561 bigon [135, Theorem 4.2]. However, a close reading of their proof reveals that the singular monogon or singular  
1562 bigon they find is in fact basic. We thus restate their result without repeating the proof.

1563 **Lemma 6.2 (Hass and Scott [135]).** *Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve on an arbitrary orientable surface. If  $\gamma$  has excess  
1564 intersections, then there is a basic singular monogon or a basic singular bigon in  $\gamma$ .*

1565 In their paper Hass and Scott also demonstrated a multicurve with excess intersections that *does not* contain  
1566 any singular monogons or bigons. Therefore our algorithms do not generalize to multicurves directly. In fact, such  
1567 question is still open.

1568 **Conjecture 6.1.** *Any multicurve on an arbitrary orientable surface can be tightened using polynomially many  
1569 homotopy moves.*

## 1570 6.2 Surfaces with Boundary

1571 In this section, we consider the case of surfaces with boundary.

1572 **Theorem 6.1.** *On an oriented surface of genus  $g$  with  $b > 0$  boundary components, a closed curve with  $n$   
1573 self-intersections can be tightened using at most  $O((g + b)n^3)$  homotopy moves.*

1574 Later in Section 6.3 we will describe a similar algorithm for closed curves on an arbitrary orientable surface  
1575 without boundary. The reader is encouraged to follow the order of the presentation and get an intuitive sense of  
1576 how the bigon removal algorithm operates in this simpler setting.

1577 Removing singular bigons, as guaranteed by Lemma 6.2, is the foundation of our upper bound proofs. Given  
 1578 a curve  $\gamma$  with  $n$  vertices that is not already tightened, we decrease the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  as follows. If  $\gamma$   
 1579 contains an *embedded* monogon or bigon, we delete it following Steinitz's algorithm (Lemma 2.2), using  $O(n)$   
 1580 homotopy moves. Otherwise, if  $\gamma$  contains a basic singular bigon, we attempt to remove it, essentially by swapping  
 1581 the two bounding curves; however, if at any point  $\gamma$  has only  $n - 2$  vertices, we immediately abort the bigon  
 1582 removal and recurse. Finally, if  $\gamma$  contains no basic singular bigons, Lemma 6.2 implies that  $\gamma$  must contain a  
 1583 basic singular monogon; we perform a single 0→1 move to transform it into a basic singular bigon (as shown in  
 1584 Figure 6.2) and then defer to the previous case.

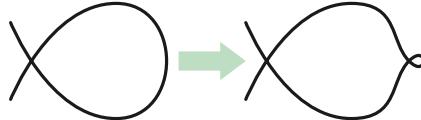


Figure 6.2. A single 0→1 move transforms a basic singular monogon into a basic singular bigon.

1585 The curve  $\gamma$  is tightened after repeating the previous reduction process at most  $n$  times. Thus, Theorem 6.1  
 1586 follows immediately from the following lemma, which we prove in the remainder of this section.

1587 **Lemma 6.3.** *Let  $\Sigma$  be an orientable surface of genus  $g$  with  $b > 0$  boundary components, and let  $\gamma$  be a closed  
 1588 curve in  $\Sigma$  with  $n$  vertices that contains a basic singular bigon, but no embedded monogons or bigons. The number  
 1589 of vertices of  $\gamma$  can be decreased by 2 using  $O((g + b)n^2)$  homotopy moves.*

### 6.2.1 Removing a Basic Singular Bigon

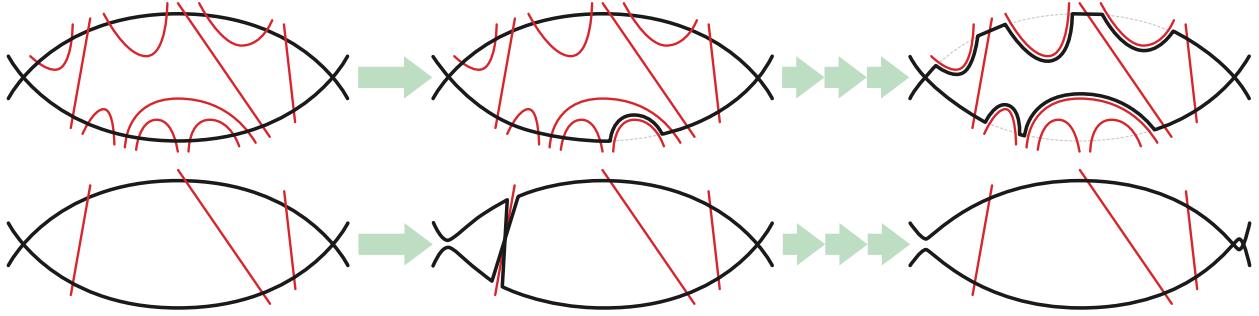
1591 Fix a surface  $\Sigma$  and a closed curve  $\gamma$  with  $n$  vertices, satisfying the conditions of Lemma 6.3. A *system of arcs*  $\Delta$   
 1592 on the surface  $\Sigma$  is a collection of simple disjoint boundary-to-boundary paths that cuts the surface  $\Sigma$  open into  
 1593 one single polygon. Euler's formula implies that every system of arcs contains exactly  $2g + b - 1$  arcs. Cutting  
 1594 the surface along these arcs leaves a topological disk  $P$  whose boundary alternates between arcs (each arc in  $\Delta$   
 1595 appears twice) and subpaths of the boundary. We refer to  $P$  as the *fundamental polygon* of  $\Sigma$  with respect to  $\Delta$ .

1596 For any closed curve  $\gamma$  on any orientable surface  $\Sigma$  with boundary, there is a system of arcs  $\Delta$  satisfying  
 1597 the following *crossing property*: Each arc in  $\Delta$  intersects each edge of  $\gamma$  at most twice, and only transversely.  
 1598 (For examples of such a construction, see Colin de Verdière and Erickson [64, Section 6.1] or Erickson and  
 1599 Nayyeri [92, Section 3].) The fundamental polygon induces a tiling of the universal cover of  $\Sigma$ ; we call each lift of  
 1600 the fundamental polygon a *tile*.

1601 Any basic singular bigon  $\beta$  of  $\gamma$  in  $\Sigma$  lifts to a bigon  $\hat{\beta}$  in the universal cover of  $\Sigma$ , with two bounding subpaths  
 1602  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  that are disjoint in the domain of  $\gamma$  except possibly at their endpoints. Since  $\hat{\beta}$  bounds a disk in the  
 1603 universal cover, any lift of any arc of  $\Delta$  intersects  $\hat{\beta}$  an even number of times. The intersection of a tile with  $\hat{\beta}$  may  
 1604 have several components; we call each component a *block*. A block is *transverse* if it is adjacent to both  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ ,  
 1605 and *extremal* otherwise. The *transverse* blocks have a natural linear ordering  $B_1, \dots, B_k$  along either  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$ .

1606 Our process for removing the bigon  $\hat{\beta}$  has three stages: (1) Sweep inward over the extremal blocks, (2) sweep  
 1607 across the sequence of transverse blocks, and finally (3) remove one small empty bigon at a corner of  $\hat{\beta}$ . The first  
 1608 two stages are illustrated in Figure 6.3. This homotopy projects to a homotopy on  $\Sigma$ . We will prove that at the end  
 1609 of this bigon removal process,  $\gamma$  has exactly  $n - 2$  vertices.

1610 To simplify our algorithm, we actually abort the bigon-removal process immediately as soon as  $\gamma$  has  $n - 2$   
 1611 vertices; however, for purposes of analysis, we conservatively assume that the removal process runs to completion.



**Figure 6.3.** Removing a basic singular bigon on a surface with boundary. Top: Sweeping extremal blocks. Bottom: Sweeping transverse blocks.

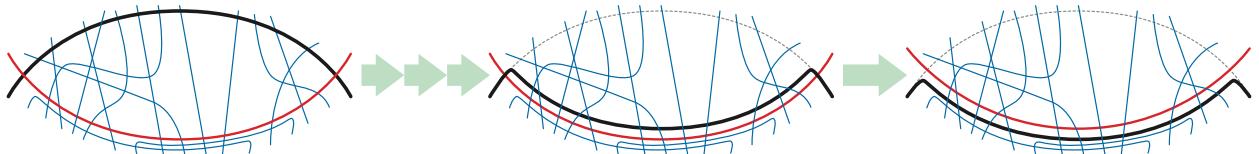
1612 We separately analyze stage (1) and stage (2) next.

1613 **Lemma 6.4.** All extremal blocks can be removed from  $\hat{\beta}$  using  $O((g + b)n^2)$  moves, without changing the number  
1614 of vertices of  $\gamma$ .

1615 **Proof:** We actually describe how to remove every embedded bigon formed by a subpath of  $\gamma$  and a subpath of any  
1616 arc in  $\Delta$  using at most  $O((g + b)n^2)$  homotopy moves, each of which is a 3→3 move. Every extremal block in  $\hat{\beta}$   
1617 projects to such an embedded bigon, because tiles (and a fortiori blocks) project injectively into the surface  $\Sigma$ .

1618 We proceed inductively as follows. Suppose  $\gamma$  and  $\Delta$  bound an embedded bigon, since otherwise there is  
1619 nothing to prove. Let  $B$  be a *minimal* embedded bigon with respect to containment, bounded by a subpath  $\delta$  of an  
1620 arc in  $\Delta$ , and a subpath  $\alpha$  of the curve  $\gamma$ . Because  $\gamma$  has no embedded monogons or bigons, every subpath of  $\gamma$   
1621 inside  $B$  is simple, and every pair of such subpaths intersects at most once. Moreover, every such subpath has  
1622 one endpoint on  $\alpha$  and the other endpoint on  $\delta$ . Thus, the number of intersections between  $\delta$  and  $\gamma$  is equal to  
1623 the number of intersections between  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma \setminus \alpha$ .

1624 To remove  $B$ , we apply the following homotopy process similar to Steinitz's algorithm (Lemma 2.2); the only  
1625 difference here is that  $\delta$  is not part of the curve  $\gamma$ , and therefore no actual homotopy move is required if some  
1626 subpaths of  $\delta$  participate in a move. We first sweep the subpath  $\alpha$  across  $B$  until the bigon defined by  $\alpha$  and  $\delta$   
1627 has no vertices in its interior, and then sweep  $\alpha$  across  $\delta$  without performing any additional homotopy moves, as  
1628 shown in Figure 6.4. Because the number of intersections between  $\delta$  and  $\gamma$  is equal to number of intersections  
1629 between  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma \setminus \alpha$ , this sweep does not change the number of vertices of  $\gamma$ .



**Figure 6.4.** Sweeping a minimal embedded bigon bounded by a subpath of  $\gamma$  (black) and a subpath of  $\Delta$  (red). Thin (blue) lines are other subpaths of  $\gamma$ .

1630 To implement the sweep, Steinitz's lemma (Lemma 2.1) implies that if the interior of  $B$  contains any vertices  
1631 of  $\gamma$ , then some triangular face of  $\gamma$  lies inside  $B$  and adjacent to an edge of  $\alpha$ . Thus, we can reduce the number of  
1632 interior vertices of  $B$  with a single 3→3 move. It follows inductively that the number of moves required to sweep  
1633 over  $B$  is equal to the number of vertices in the interior of  $B$ , which is trivially at most  $n$ .

1634 Removing a minimal embedded bigon between  $\gamma$  and  $\Delta$  takes at most  $n$  moves and decreases the number  
1635 of intersections between  $\gamma$  and  $\Delta$  by 2. Each of the  $O(g + b)$  arcs in  $\Delta$  intersects each of the  $O(n)$  edges of  $\gamma$

at most twice by the crossing property of  $\Delta$ , so the total number of such intersections is at most  $O((g + b)n)$ . Finally, because every move is a 3→3 move, we *never* change the number of vertices of  $\gamma$ . The lemma follows immediately.  $\square$

Now let  $B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k$  denote the sequence of transverse blocks of  $\hat{\beta}$ , and let  $\delta_i$  denote the common boundary  $B_i$  and  $B_{i+1}$  for each index  $i$ . Each path  $\delta_i$  is a subpath of a lift of some arc in  $\Delta$ . For notational convenience, let  $x := \delta_0$  and  $y := \delta_k$  denote the endpoints of  $\hat{\beta}$ , so that each block  $B_i$  has paths  $\delta_{i-1}$  and  $\delta_i$  on its boundary.

Recall that  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  denote the bounding subpaths of  $\hat{\beta}$ . To sweep over the transverse blocks, we *intuitively* maintain a path  $\phi$  from a point on  $\lambda$  to a point on  $\rho$ , which we call the *frontier*. The frontier starts as a trivial path at the endpoint  $\delta_0$ . Then we repeatedly sweep the frontier over  $B_i$  from  $\delta_{i-1}$  to  $\delta_i$ , as  $i$  goes from 1 to  $k$ . After these  $k$  iterations, the frontier lies at the endpoint  $\delta_k$ .

Our actual homotopy modifies the bounding curves  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  as shown in the bottom of Figure 6.3. Intuitively, the prefixes of  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  “behind”  $\phi$  are swapped; the frontier itself is actually an arbitrarily close pair of crossing subpaths connecting the swapped prefixes of  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  with the unswapped suffixes “ahead” of the frontier. Replacing the single path  $\phi$  with a close pair of crossing paths increases the number of homotopy moves to perform the sweep by only a constant factor.

**Lemma 6.5.** *Sweeping  $\phi$  over one transverse block requires at most  $O(n)$  homotopy moves.*

**Proof:** Consider a sweep over  $B_i$ , from  $\delta_{i-1}$  to  $\delta_i$ . We start by moving the frontier just inside  $B_i$ , without performing any homotopy moves. The main sweep passes  $\phi$  over every vertex in  $B_i$ , including the vertices on the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ , stopping  $\phi$  just before it reaches  $\delta_i$ . Finally, we move the frontier onto  $\delta_i$  without performing any homotopy moves. Because the interior of each block projects injectively onto the surface, no other translate of  $\phi$  intersects  $B_i$  during the sweep.

Up to constant factors, the number of homotopy moves required to sweep  $B_i$  is bounded by the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  inside  $B_i$ , plus the number of intersections between  $\gamma$  and the bounding subpaths  $\delta_{i-1}$  or  $\delta_i$ . There are trivially at most  $n$  vertices in  $B_i$ , and the crossing property of the system of arcs  $\Delta$  implies that each arc in  $\Delta$  intersects  $\gamma$  at most  $O(n)$  times.  $\square$

With the two previous lemmas in hand, we are finally ready to prove Lemma 6.3. Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve in  $\Sigma$  with a basic singular bigon  $\beta$ , let  $\hat{\beta}$  be a lift of  $\beta$  to the universal cover of  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\lambda$  be one of the bounding paths of  $\hat{\beta}$ .

The definition of singular bigon implies that  $\lambda$  contains at most  $2n$  edges of  $\gamma$  by Lemma 6.1. Each of these edges crosses each arc of  $\Delta$  at most twice, and there are  $O(g + b)$  arcs in  $\Delta$ , so  $\lambda$  crosses  $\Delta$  at most  $O((g + b)n)$  times. Each transverse block  $B_i$  except the last can be charged to the unique intersection point  $\delta_i \cap \lambda$ . We conclude that  $\hat{\beta}$  contains  $O((g + b)n)$  transverse blocks.

Sweeping inward over all extremal blocks in  $\hat{\beta}$  requires  $O((g + b)n^2)$  homotopy moves and does not change the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  by Lemma 6.4. Sweeping over all  $O((g + b)n)$  transverse blocks requires a total of  $O((g + b)n^2)$  homotopy moves by Lemma 6.5. Sweeping the transverse blocks has the same effect as smoothing one endpoint of the bigon and doubling the other endpoint, as shown on the bottom right of Figure 6.3, which implies that  $\gamma$  still has  $n$  vertices. Removing the final empty bigon with a single 2→0 move reduces the number of vertices to  $n - 2$ .

This completes the proof of Lemma 6.3, and therefore the proof of Theorem 6.1.

## 1675 6.3 Surfaces Without Boundary

1676 In this section, we prove our upper bound for closed curves on surfaces without boundary. The following theorem  
1677 improves over the  $O(n^4)$  bound given by the earlier conference version [47] when the genus  $g$  is at most  $n/\log^2 n$ .

1678 **Theorem 6.2.** *On an oriented surface without boundary, a closed curve with  $n$  self-intersections can be tightened  
1679 using at most  $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$  homotopy moves.*

1680 We follow the same high-level strategy described in Section 6.2; consequently, it suffices to prove that a basic  
1681 singular bigon can be removed using  $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$  homotopy moves.

1682 Instead of a system of arcs, we decompose the surface using a *reduced cut graph*; this cut graph induces a  
1683 regular hyperbolic tiling in the universal cover of the surface. In Section 6.3.1 we describe how to compute a  
1684 cut graph whose induced tiling intersects the bounding paths of any basic singular bigon at most  $O(n)$  times. In  
1685 Section 6.3.2, we apply Dehn’s isoperimetric inequality for regular hyperbolic tilings [75] to bound the number of  
1686 tiles lying in the interior of the bigon. Then we describe our process for removing a singular bigon at two levels of  
1687 detail. First, in Section 6.3.3, we provide a coarse description of the homotopy as a sequence of moves in the *bigon  
1688 graph*, which is the decomposition of the lifted bigon by the tiling. We process the regions in this decomposition in  
1689 a particular order to keep the number of *chords* created by translates of the moving path under control. Finally in  
1690 Section 6.3.4 we obtain the actual sequence of homotopy moves by carefully perturbing the curves in the previous  
1691 homotopy into general position; bounding the intersections between perturbed chords is the most delicate portion  
1692 of our analysis.

### 1693 6.3.1 Dual Reduced Cut Graphs

1694 A **tree-cotree decomposition** of a cellularly embedded graph  $G$  is a partition  $(T, L, C)$  of the edges of  $G$  into three  
1695 disjoint subsets: a spanning tree  $T$  of  $G$ , the edges  $C$  corresponding to a spanning tree of the dual graph  $G^*$ , and  
1696 exactly  $2g$  leftover edges  $L := E(G) \setminus (T \cup C)$ , where  $g$  is the genus of the underlying surface [86].

1697 Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve on  $\Sigma$ ; we temporarily view  $\gamma$  as a 4-regular graph with some given embedding. However,  
1698 the embedding of  $\gamma$  is not necessarily cellular; let  $G$  be a cellular refinement of  $\gamma$  obtained by triangulating every  
1699 face. A **dual reduced cut graph**  $X$  (hereafter, just **cut graph**) is a cellularly embedded graph obtained from a  
1700 tree-cotree decomposition  $(T, L, C)$  of  $G$  as follows: Start with the subgraph of  $G^*$  induced by the dual spanning  
1701 tree  $C^*$  and the leftover edges  $L^*$ , repeatedly delete vertices with degree one, and finally perform series reductions  
1702 on all vertices with degree two [91].

1703 The cut graph  $X$  inherits a cellular embedding into  $\Sigma$  from the embedding of  $G^*$ ; by construction, this embedding  
1704 has exactly one face. Because every vertex of  $X$  has degree 3, Euler’s formula implies that  $X$  has exactly  $4g - 2$   
1705 vertices and  $6g - 3$  edges. To be consistent with the terminology in Section 6.2.1, we call the edges of  $X$  **arcs**.  
1706 Cutting the surface  $\Sigma$  along  $X$  yields a polygon with  $12g - 6$  sides, which we call the **fundamental polygon** of  $X$ .  
1707 The cut graph induces a regular tiling  $\hat{X}$  of the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$  of  $\Sigma$ ; we refer to each lift of the fundamental  
1708 polygon of  $X$  as a **tile**.

1709 By construction, the cut graph  $X$  satisfies the following **crossing property**: *Each edge of the curve  $\gamma$  crosses  $X$   
1710 at most once.* We emphasize that this crossing property might no longer hold when we start moving the curve  $\gamma$ .  
1711 Compared with the system of arcs we used in Section 6.2 which satisfies a weaker crossing property (that each  
1712 edge of  $\gamma$  crosses *each* arc at most  $O(1)$  times), the cut graph gives us an improved upper bound on the number of  
1713 tiles intersecting the bounding paths of an embedded bigon in the universal cover of  $\Sigma$ .

1714 **Bigon graph.** The tiling of the universal cover of  $\Sigma$  induced by the cut graph  $X$  decomposes the disk bounded  
1715 by  $\hat{\beta}$  into pieces; we call this decomposition the *bigon graph*. More formally, we define the bigon graph  $G$  as  
1716 follows. By construction,  $\hat{\beta}$  intersects the tiling  $\hat{X}$  transversely. The vertices of  $G$  are the two endpoints of  $\hat{\beta}$ , the  
1717 intersections of  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  with arcs of the tiling, and the vertices of the tiling in the interior of  $\hat{\beta}$ . The arcs of  $G$  are  
1718 subpaths of  $\lambda \cup \rho$  and subpaths of tiling arcs bounded by these vertices. Finally, the bounded faces of  $G$  are the  
1719 components of the intersection of each tile with the interior of  $\hat{\beta}$ . We emphasize that the intersection of a single  
1720 tile with the interior of  $\hat{\beta}$  may have several components.

### 1721 6.3.2 Isoperimetric Inequality

1722 Consider an embedded bigon  $\hat{\beta}$  in the universal cover of surface  $\Sigma$ , which is a lift of a basic singular bigon in the  
1723 curve  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ . Unlike the case of surface with boundary in Section 6.2, there may be tiles lying completely in the  
1724 *interior* of the bigon  $\hat{\beta}$ , without intersecting the two bounding paths. We bound the number of such interior tiles  
1725 using a discrete isoperimetric inequality, which is a consequence of Dehn's seminal observation that the graph  
1726 metric defined by a regular tiling of the hyperbolic plane is a good approximation of the continuous hyperbolic  
1727 metric [75]. We provide a self-contained proof of this inequality, using a combinatorial version of the Gauss-Bonnet  
1728 theorem described at varying levels of generality by Banchoff [18], Lyndon and Schupp [174], and Gersten and  
1729 Short [111].

1730 Let  $G$  be a graph with a cellular embedding onto surface  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\chi(\Sigma)$  be the Euler characteristic of  $\Sigma$ , defined  
1731 as the number of vertices and faces in  $G$  minus the number of edges in  $G$ , which is equal to  $\chi(\Sigma) = 2 - 2g - b$ ,  
1732 where  $g$  is the genus of  $\Sigma$  and  $b$  is the number of boundary components of  $\Sigma$ . One can view the definition of the  
1733 Euler characteristic of  $\Sigma$  through a different lens. Assign an arbitrary real “interior angle”  $\angle c$  to each corner  $c$   
1734 of  $\Sigma$ . Define the *curvature*  $\kappa(v)$  of a vertex  $v$  of  $G$  as  $1 - \frac{1}{2} \deg v + \sum_{c \in v} (\frac{1}{2} - \angle c)$ , and the *curvature*  $\kappa(f)$  of a  
1735 face  $f$  of  $G$  as  $1 - \sum_{c \in f} (\frac{1}{2} - \angle c)$ . The following equality, which is an immediate consequence of Euler's formula, is  
1736 known as the *combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem*:

$$\sum_v \kappa(v) + \sum_f \kappa(f) = \chi(\Sigma).$$

1738 Now we are ready to bound the number of faces of the bigon graph  $G$ . The *perimeter*  $L(G)$  of the bigon  
1739 graph  $G$  is the number of intersections between the two bounding paths of the bigon and arcs of  $\hat{X}$ .

1740 **Lemma 6.6.** *Let  $\Sigma$  be a closed surface of genus  $g > 1$ , let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve on  $\Sigma$ , let  $X$  be the cut graph of  $\gamma$   
1741 on  $\Sigma$ , and let  $G$  be a bigon graph of some embedded bigon  $\hat{\beta}$  in  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Then the number of faces in the bigon graph  $G$   
1742 is at most  $O(L(G))$ .*

1743 **Proof:** Let  $I$  denote the union of all tiles in  $\hat{X}$  that lie entirely in the interior of  $\hat{\beta}$  (that is, the union of all faces  
1744 of  $G$  that are actually complete tiles). The region  $I$  may be empty or disconnected; however, every component of  $I$   
1745 is a closed disk. First we connect the number of tiles in  $I$  with the number of vertices on the boundary of  $I$ .

1746 Let  $D$  be an arbitrary component of  $I$ . Let  $A$  denote the number of tiles in  $D$ , and let  $L$  denote the number  
1747 of vertices on the boundary of  $D$ . Every boundary vertex is either incident to one interior tile and has degree 2  
1748 (convex) or incident to two interior tiles and has degree 3 (concave). Let  $L^+$  and  $L^-$  respectively denote the  
1749 number of convex and concave vertices on the boundary of  $D$ . Assign angle  $1/3$  to each corner of  $D$ , so that

- 1750 • every interior vertex has curvature 0,

- 1751 • every convex vertex has curvature  $1/6$ ,
- 1752 • every concave vertex has curvature  $-1/6$ , and
- 1753 • every face has curvature  $2 - 2g$ .

1754 The combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem now implies that  $(L^+ - L^-)/6 + (2 - 2g)A = 1$ , and therefore  $L^+ - L^- =$   
 1755  $(12g - 12)A + 6$ . (In particular,  $L^+ \geq L^-$ .) Thus, some face  $f$  is incident to at least  $12g - 11$  convex vertices, and  
 1756 therefore at least  $12g - 10$  arcs on the boundary of  $D$ . Deleting  $f$  from  $D$  removes at least  $12g - 10$  boundary arcs  
 1757 and exposes at most 4 interior arcs. The isoperimetric inequality  $A \leq L/(12g - 14)$  now follows immediately by  
 1758 induction.

1759 Now consider the embedded bigon  $\hat{\beta}$ . Because each vertex in  $\hat{X}$  has degree 3, every convex vertex of  $I$  is either  
 1760 incident to an arc intersecting  $\hat{\beta}$ , or incident to another convex vertex of  $I$ , in which case the two convex vertices  
 1761 belongs to different components of  $I$ . The number of components of  $I$  having no convex vertices incident to  $\hat{\beta}$  is  
 1762 strictly less than the number of those do, and therefore by an easy charging argument, there are at most  $O(L(G))$   
 1763 convex vertices on the boundary of  $I$ . Using the deduced inequality  $L^+ \geq L^-$  from the previous paragraph, we  
 1764 have now showed that  $I$  contains at most  $O(L(G))$  vertices and thus at most  $O(L(G)/g)$  tiles. In the mean while,  
 1765 at most  $O(L(G))$  faces are incident to the boundary of  $\hat{\beta}$ . Thus, the total number of faces of  $G$  is at most  $O(L(G))$ ,  
 1766 as claimed.  $\square$

1767 Lemma 6.1 and the crossing property of the cut graph  $X$  imply that at most  $O(n)$  tiles of  $\Sigma$  intersect the two  
 1768 bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  of  $\hat{\beta}$ . Thus Lemma 6.6 implies that the bigon graph  $G$  has at most  $O(n)$  faces, and  
 1769 therefore  $O(n)$  vertices and arcs by Euler's formula.

1770 As a corollary, one can derive a logarithmic bound on the maximum distance from any vertex of  $\hat{X}$  inside the  
 1771 bigon to one of the two bounding paths.

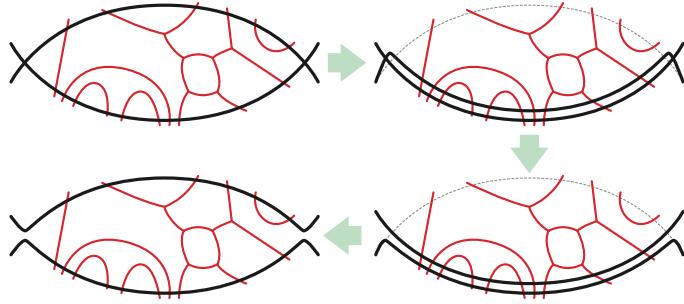
1772 **Lemma 6.7.** *Let  $\Sigma$  be an orientable surface of genus  $g > 1$  and  $\gamma$  be a closed curve on  $\Sigma$ . Let  $X$  be the cut graph  
 1773 of  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$  and  $G$  be the corresponding bigon graph of some embedded bigon  $\hat{\beta}$  in  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Denote  $n$  the number of  
 1774 vertices in  $G$ . Then the maximum distance from a vertex of  $G$  to either bounding path of  $\hat{\beta}$  is at most  $O(\log n)$ .*

1775 **Proof:** Consider the set  $S_{\leq k}$  of vertices of  $G$  with distance at most  $k$  to some fixed vertex  $v$  of  $G$ . As  $k$  grows, the  
 1776 set  $S_{\leq k}$  grows exponentially in size since  $\hat{X}$  is a hyperbolic tiling. This implies that for some distance  $k = O(\log n)$   
 1777 the set  $S_{\leq k}$  has non-empty intersection with the given bounding path of  $\hat{\beta}$ .  $\square$

### 1778 6.3.3 Coarse Homotopy

1779 Let  $\beta$  be a basic singular bigon in  $\gamma$ , let  $\hat{\beta}$  be its lift to the universal cover, and let  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  be the bounding paths  
 1780 of  $\hat{\beta}$ . Our goal is to remove this bigon by swapping the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ , which has the same effect as  
 1781 smoothing the two endpoints of  $\beta$ , reducing the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  by 2. See Figure 6.5. In this section, we  
 1782 construct a homotopy from  $\lambda$  to  $\rho$ , not as a sequence of individual homotopy moves, but as a coarser sequence  
 1783 of moves in the bigon graph of  $\hat{\beta}$ . Applying the reversal of this sequence of moves to  $\rho$  moves it to the original  
 1784 position of  $\lambda$ , completing the exchange of the two bounding paths.

1785 **Discrete homotopy.** We construct a *discrete homotopy* [35, 36, 133] through the bigon graph  $G$  that transforms  
 1786 one bounding path  $\lambda$  of the bigon into the other bounding path  $\rho$ . This discrete homotopy is a sequence of walks  
 1787 in  $G$ —which may traverse the same arc in  $G$  more than once—rather than a sequence of generic curves. In the



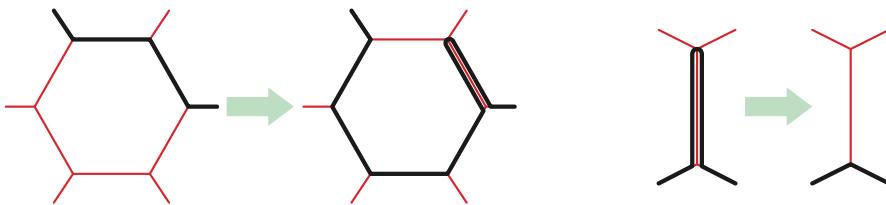
**Figure 6.5.** Swapping the two bounding paths of a bigon.

1788 next section, we will carefully perturb these walks into generic curves, and implement each step of the discrete  
 1789 homotopy as a finite sequence of homotopy moves.

1790 Let  $W$  be a walk on the bigon graph  $G$  from one endpoint of the bigon to the other. A *spike* in  $W$  is an arc of  $G$   
 1791 followed immediately by the same arc in the opposite direction. We define two local operations for modifying  $W$ ;  
 1792 see Figure 6.6.

- 1793 • **Face move:** Replace a single arc  $e$  in  $W$  with the complementary boundary walk around some face  $f$  of  $G$   
 1794 that is incident to  $e$ .
- 1795 • **Spike move:** Delete a spike from  $W$  and decrease the length of  $W$  by two.

1796 We emphasize that after a face move across face  $f$ , the frontier walk  $W$  may traverse some arcs of  $f$  more than  
 1797 once; moreover, these multiple traversals may or may not be spikes. Because every face  $f$  is a disk, the arc  $e$  and  
 1798 its complementary boundary walk around  $f$  share endpoints, and thus any face move can be implemented by a  
 1799 homotopy across  $f$ . Similarly, a spike move can be implemented by a homotopy in the arc containing the spike. A  
 1800 discrete homotopy in  $G$  is a finite sequence of face moves and spike moves. We refer to the current walk  $W$  at any  
 1801 stage of this homotopy as the *frontier walk*.



**Figure 6.6.** A face move and a spike move.

1802 The following result by Har-Peled *et al.* [133] guarantees the existence of some discrete homotopy whose  
 1803 frontier walk is short at all times. The original result assumes that the underlying graph is triangulated; however  
 1804 the proof still works on regular tilings.

1805 **Lemma 6.8 (Har-Peled *et al.* [133, Theorem 1]).** *Given an  $n$ -vertex arc-weighted bigon graph  $G$  with two  
 1806 bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ , there is a discrete homotopy from  $\lambda$  to  $\rho$  whose frontier walk has (weighted) length at  
 1807 most*

$$O(|\lambda| + |\rho| + f_* \cdot (d_* + w_*) \cdot \log n),$$

1809 where  $f_*$  is the maximum size of the faces,  $d_*$  is the maximum distance between a vertex in  $G$  and a vertex on  $\lambda$ ,  
 1810 and  $w_*$  is the maximum arc weight over all arcs. Furthermore, each arc of  $G$  is traversed at most twice by any

1811 frontier walk in the discrete homotopy.

1812 Set the weight of each arc  $e$  in the bigon graph  $G$  to 0 if  $e$  is on the bounding path  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$ , and set the weight  
 1813 to 1 otherwise. By Lemma 6.7, the maximum distance between a vertex in  $G$  and a vertex on  $\lambda$  is at most  $O(\log n)$ .  
 1814 Now apply Lemma 6.8 to  $G$ , one obtains a discrete homotopy from  $\lambda$  to  $\rho$  where all the frontier walks have at  
 1815 most  $O(g \log^2 n)$  arcs of  $\hat{X}$  not on  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$ , and each arc of  $G$  is traversed at most twice by any frontier walk in the  
 1816 discrete homotopy. By crossing property of the cut graph  $X$ , there is at most  $O(n)$  crossings between  $\hat{\gamma}$  and  $X$ , and  
 1817 therefore together with Lemma 6.1 all the frontier walks have at most  $O(gn \log^2 n)$  crossings with  $\hat{\gamma}$ . We  
 1818 refer these as the *frontier property* of the coarse homotopy, summarized as follow: At every stage of the discrete  
 1819 homotopy,

- 1820 (a) the frontier walk  $W$  passes through at most  $O(g \log^2 n)$  arcs of  $\hat{X}$  not on  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$ ,
- 1821 (b) the frontier walk  $W$  intersects (the original)  $\hat{\gamma}$  at most  $O(gn \log^2 n)$  times, and
- 1822 (c) each arc of  $G$  is traversed at most twice by any frontier walk in the discrete homotopy.

### 1823 6.3.4 Fine Homotopy

1824 Interactions between the moving frontier and the original curve present a significant subtlety in our algorithm. We  
 1825 refine the discrete homotopy in the previous section, first by perturbing the moving frontier walk so that after  
 1826 every graph move  $\gamma$  is a generic curve, and then by decomposing the perturbed graph moves into a finite sequence  
 1827 of homotopy moves.

1828 **Perturbing the frontier.** First, given the frontier walk  $\hat{W}$  at any stage of the coarse homotopy, perturb  $\hat{W}$  into  
 1829 a simple path in the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Based on the frontier property (c) of the coarse homotopy described in  
 1830 Section 6.3.3, combinatorially there is only one such perturbation. We will denote the *perturbed frontier walk*  
 1831 in  $\hat{\Sigma}$  by  $\hat{\omega}$ . Project the perturbed frontier walk  $\hat{\omega}$  back to the surface  $\Sigma$  to obtain the *frontier curve*  $\omega$ . Notice  
 1832 that the number of self-intersections of  $\omega$  near any vertex of (the original)  $\gamma$  is at most 4 (locally it looks like the  
 1833 symbol #). The frontier curve  $\omega$  is not necessarily generic, as subpaths of  $\omega$  near the cut graph  $X$  could overlap  
 1834 each other in unspecified ways.

1835 To specify the perturbation near the cut graph  $X$ , we define a convenient family  $\mathcal{O}$  of open sets, which we  
 1836 call **bubbles**, that covers the cut graph  $X$  and its complement face in  $\Sigma$ , following a construction of Babson and  
 1837 Chan [17]. (See also Erickson [89].) Each bubble in  $\mathcal{O}$  is either a vertex bubble, an arc bubble, or a face bubble.

1838 The vertex bubbles are disjoint open balls around the vertices of  $X$ . The arc bubbles are disjoint open  
 1839 neighborhoods of the portions of the arcs of  $X$  away from the vertices. Finally, the face bubble is an open  
 1840 neighborhood of the portions of  $\Sigma \setminus X$  away from the vertices and the arcs; there is only one face bubble in  $\mathcal{O}$ . The  
 1841 intersection of all pairs of two bubbles of different types is the disjoint union of open disks, one for each incidence  
 1842 between the corresponding vertex and arc, vertex and face, or arc and face of  $X$ . See Figure 6.7.

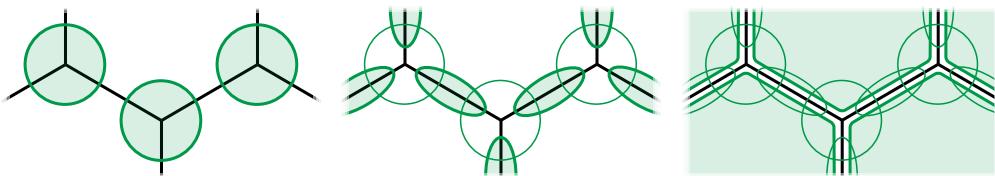
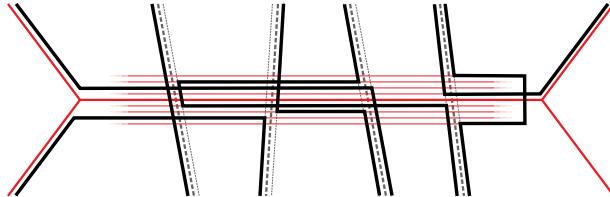


Figure 6.7. Vertex bubbles, arc bubbles, and face bubbles.

1843 We now describe how to draw the frontier curve  $\omega$  near the cut graph  $X$  so that the complexity inside each  
 1844 bubble of  $X$  is controlled. We model each arc bubble as a *Euclidean* rectangle containing several straight segments  
 1845 parallel to the arc, which we call *tracks*, arranged so that each track in the arc bubble of  $e$  intersects  $\gamma$  transversely.  
 1846 (The metric is merely a convenience, so that we can write “straight” and “parallel”; the tracks can be defined  
 1847 purely combinatorially.)



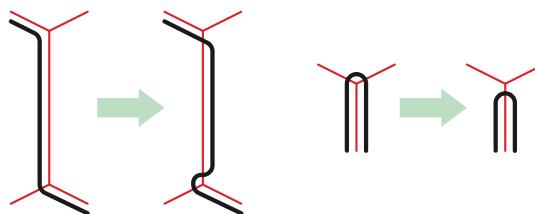
**Figure 6.8.** Closeup of an arc bubble of some arc  $e$  in  $X$ , showing subpaths of the frontier  $\omega$  sticking to subpaths in  $e$ , including the perturbations of two spikes.

1848 Now consider a frontier curve  $\omega$ ; each maximal subpath along some arc  $e$  of  $X$  is drawn on a unique track in  
 1849 the arc bubble of  $e$ . Moreover, when  $\omega$  switches from arc  $e$  to another arc  $e'$  (including at the tip of a spike at a  
 1850 vertex of  $X$ , which we view as a zero-length walk), there is a corner at the intersection of those two tracks. The  
 1851 part of  $\omega$  that follows the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  stays unchanged.

1852 Thus, every subpath of  $\omega$  inside the arc bubble of some arc  $e$  alternates between tracks parallel to  $e$  and either  
 1853 (1) tracks parallel to other arcs or (2) parallel to the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ . Intuitively, we say that a subpath of  
 1854  $\omega$  **sticks to** an arc of  $X$  if the subpath lies on some track in the corresponding arc bubble. Similarly, we say that a  
 1855 subpath of  $\omega$  **sticks to** the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  if the corresponding subpath of  $\hat{W}$  traverses arcs of  $G$  on  $\hat{\lambda}$   
 1856 and  $\hat{\rho}$  in the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . See Figure 6.8.

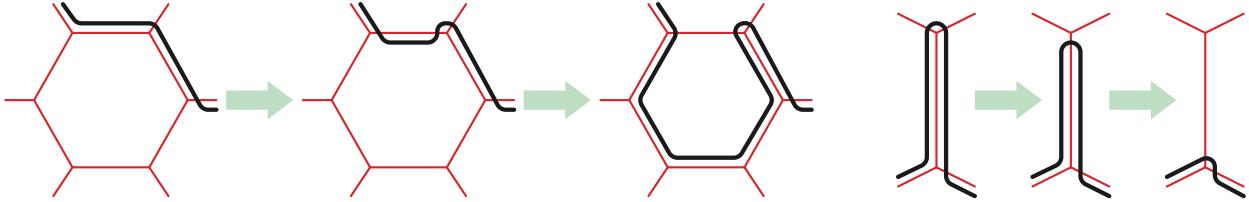
1857 **Graph moves revisited.** In our perturbed homotopy, we require every face move to be performed entirely within  
 1858 the corresponding face bubble, and every spike move to be performed entirely within the corresponding arc bubble,  
 1859 while maintaining the track structure of the perturbed frontier  $\omega$ . To this end, we introduce two additional graph  
 1860 moves for modifying the frontier curve  $\omega$ .

- **Arc move:** Move a maximal subpath sticking to an arc  $e$  of  $X$  into an incident face bubble, within the arc  
bubble of  $e$  implemented by switching tracks.
- **Vertex move:** Move the curve across a vertex  $v$  of  $X$  within the corresponding vertex bubble.



**Figure 6.9.** An arc move and a vertex move.

1864 The arc moves and vertex moves can be seen as preprocessing steps to ensure that a subpath of  $\omega$  lies in the  
 1865 proper face or arc bubble before performing a face or a spike move. Thus, our perturbed coarse homotopy still  
 1866 follows the outline given in Section 6.3.3, but now each face move might be prefaced by a single arc move, and  
 1867 each spike move might be prefaced by a single vertex move, as shown in Figure 6.10.



**Figure 6.10.** Top: An arc move followed by a face move. Bottom: A vertex move followed by a spike move.

We emphasize that every face move is performed entirely within a face bubble, every arc move and spike move is performed entirely within an arc bubble, and every vertex move is performed entirely within a vertex bubble. Therefore each graph move can be implemented solely on the original surface  $\Sigma$ .

**The final homotopy.** Finally, we construct a sequence of homotopy moves moving one bounding path  $\lambda$  to the other bounding path  $\rho$  by decomposing the perturbed graph moves.

**Lemma 6.9.** Let  $\Sigma$  be an orientable surface without boundary, and let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve with  $n$  vertices on  $\Sigma$  that contains a basic singular bigon  $\beta$ , but no embedded monogons or bigons. Then  $\beta$  can be removed using  $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$  homotopy moves, without changing the rest of  $\gamma$ .

**Proof:** Let  $\hat{\beta}$  be the lift of  $\beta$  to the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$ ; let  $\hat{\lambda}$  and  $\hat{\rho}$  be the bounding curves of  $\hat{\beta}$  in  $\hat{\Sigma}$ ; let  $G$  be the corresponding bigon graph. Our earlier analysis implies that  $G$  has at most  $O(n)$  vertices, arcs, and faces. Thus, moving  $\hat{\lambda}$  to  $\hat{\rho}$  requires at most  $O(n)$  graph moves.

Each of these graph moves is performed within a bubble in  $\mathcal{O}$  that embeds in  $\Sigma$ , and therefore can be realized using  $O(m)$  homotopy moves, where  $m$  is the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  within that bubble before the graph move begins. It remains only to prove the following claim:

Between any two graph moves, the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  inside any bubble is at most  $O(gn \log^2 n)$ .

The proof of this claim is surprisingly delicate. All the properties we mentioned in each of the previous subsections contribute to avoid the danger of increasing the number of vertices in  $\gamma$  uncontrollably during the process: (1) dividing the homotopy into graph moves (Section 6.3.1 and Section 6.3.2), (2) the order of face moves (Section 6.3.3), and (3) the way the perturbed frontier curve lies near the cut graph (Section 6.3.4). For the rest of the proof we refer to subpaths of the frontier curve  $\omega$  within a bubble simply as **chords**.

The maximum number of vertices of curve  $\gamma$  inside a bubble between two graph moves is at most the sum of the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  before the homotopy, the number of intersections between the original  $\gamma$  and the chords, and the number of intersections between pairs of chords. The first term is at most  $n$  by definition; the frontier property (b) of the coarse homotopy implies that the second term is at most  $O(gn \log^2 n)$ . To bound the last term, we separately consider each type of bubble:

- **Face bubble:** Because vertices and arcs of the tiling do not lie inside a face bubble, every chord in a face bubble sticks to the bounding paths  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$ . The way we construct the perturbed frontier curve  $\omega$  ensures that at most two chords stick to the same subpath of  $\lambda$  or  $\rho$  in the bubble. Since both  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  are subpaths of  $\gamma$ , we can charge the intersections between chords to the corresponding vertices in (the original)  $\gamma$ . There are at most  $n$  vertices of  $\gamma$  in the face bubble, and therefore at most  $O(n)$  vertices are created by intersecting chords within the bubble.

- *Arc bubbles:* Our construction ensures that the chords within each arc bubble are polygonal curves, and the number of intersections between two such chords does not exceed the sum of the number of segments in each of them. The frontier property (c) of the coarse homotopy implies that each arc of  $X$  is traversed by  $\hat{W}$  at most twice, and therefore each chord sticking to  $e$  consists of at most  $O(1)$  segments. It follows that any pair of chords that stick to the arc intersect  $O(1)$  times. The frontier property (a) of the coarse homotopy implies that  $\hat{W}$  always traverse at most  $O(g \log^2 n)$  arcs not on the bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ . This in turn implies that there are at most  $O(g \log^2 n)$  chords inside any arc bubble that stick to the arc, and at most  $O(g \log^2 n)$  tracks are needed for any arc bubble. By crossing property of the cut graph, at most  $O(n)$  chords stick to  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$ . We conclude that at most  $O(gn \log^2 n)$  vertices are created by intersecting chords within any arc bubble.
- *Vertex bubbles:* Being subpaths of  $\gamma$ , bounding paths  $\lambda$  and  $\rho$  will never intersect the vertex bubbles. Thus, each chord in a vertex bubble sticks to a walk on the arcs of  $X$  incident to the vertex, which must have length 2. Our construction of the perturbed frontier  $\omega$  ensures that each pair of these chords intersects at most  $O(1)$  times. Similar to the case of the arc bubble, there are at most  $O(\log^2 n)$  chords inside any vertex bubble. We conclude that at most  $O(\log^4 n)$  vertices are created by chords intersecting within any vertex bubble.

This concludes the proof. □

**Summary.** We conclude by summarizing our proof of Theorem 6.2. Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve on an orientable surface without boundary. If  $\gamma$  is not yet tightened, Lemma 6.2 implies that after at most one 0→1 move (see Figure 6.2),  $\gamma$  contains at least one basic singular bigon. By Lemma 6.9, we can decrease the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  by two by removing one basic singular bigon in  $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$  homotopy moves. After  $O(n)$  such bigon removals, all the excess intersections of  $\gamma$  must have been removed. We conclude that  $\gamma$  can be tightened using at most  $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$  homotopy moves.

## 6.4 Tightening Curves Using Monotonic Homotopy Moves

The proofs of Hass and Scott [136] and de Graaf and Schrijver [125] have the additional benefit that the number of vertices of the curve never increases during the homotopy process.<sup>1</sup> It would be much preferable if our efficient homotopy processes in Section 6.2 and Section 6.3 are monotonic as well; in other words, we are looking for a sequence of polynomially many *monotonic* homotopy moves to tighten the given multicurve.

We made partial progress towards such a goal. In particular, we show that it is sufficient to assume the surface has boundary. Let  $\gamma$  be a multicurve on  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\gamma_*$  be the unique **geodesic** of  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ —a multicurve consisting of each shortest representative among the homotopy class of the constituent curves in  $\gamma$ . Let the  **$\varepsilon$ -neighborhood** of a curve  $\gamma$  be the union of all  $\varepsilon$ -disks centered at some point of  $\gamma$ . We say the curve  $\gamma$  is  **$\varepsilon$ -close** to the geodesic  $\gamma_*$  if the lift of  $\gamma$  in the universal cover lies in an  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of the lift of  $\gamma_*$ .

**Lemma 6.10.** *Let  $\gamma$  be an  $n$ -vertex noncontractible curve on a genus- $g$  orientable surface  $\Sigma$  and let  $\gamma_*$  be the unique geodesic of  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ . Curve  $\gamma$  can be made  $\varepsilon$ -close to  $\gamma_*$  using  $O(n^5 \log^3 g / g^2)$  monotonic homotopy moves for some  $\varepsilon = O(g / (n \log g))$ ; furthermore, the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $\gamma_*$  does not cover the whole surface  $\Sigma$ .*

<sup>1</sup>De Graaf and Schrijver's result requires a fourth type of homotopy move, which moves an isolated simple contractible constituent curve from one face of the rest of the multicurve to another. However, since this move can only be applied to disconnected multicurves, it does not affect our argument.

The proof of Lemma 6.10 can be viewed as an efficient implementation of the first step of the algorithm by de Graaf and Schrijver, moving the curve close to the unique geodesic of its homotopy class. Our proof relies heavily on hyperbolic trigonometry; for a clean introduction to the topic see Traver [241].

#### 6.4.1 Moving Curves Close to Geodesics

In this subsection we prove Lemma 6.10. Let  $\Theta$  be a tangle whose disk is endowed with a hyperbolic metric. Tangle  $\Theta$  is *straightened* if all the strands of  $\Theta$  are geodesics with respect to  $d_H$ . We emphasize the difference between *straightened* and *tightened*; a straightened tangle must be tightened, but *not* vice versa. We will make use of the following quantitative version of Ringel's homotopy theorem [203, 204] (see also [120, 125, 136, 211]).

**Lemma 6.11 (Hass and Scott [136, Lemma 1.6]).** *Any  $n$ -vertex tangle can be straightened (with respect to a hyperbolic metric) monotonically using  $O(n^2)$  homotopy moves.*

**Construct hyperbolic metric.** First we modify  $\gamma$  by straightening all the strands of within the open disk  $\Sigma \setminus X$  using  $O(n^2)$  moves by Lemma 6.11. Now we construct a hyperbolic metric on surface  $\Sigma$  such that

- (1) the length of the (modified) curve  $\gamma$  is at most  $O(n \log g)$ , and
- (2) the length of the shortest non-contractible cycle (known as the *systole*) is at least 1.

The construction is similar to the argument in Dehn's seminal result [75] that the graph distance on a regular tiling of the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$  approximates the hyperbolic metric on  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Construct the cut graph  $X$  from curve  $\gamma$  such that every edge of  $\gamma$  crosses  $X$  at most  $O(1)$  times, like we described in Section 6.3.1. Lift the cut graph  $X$  to the universal cover endowed with the unique hyperbolic metric, such that each corner has angle  $1/3$  circles; this implies that each side of the fundamental polygon has length at least 1.<sup>2</sup> One can project the metric back to the original surface; denote the hyperbolic metric constructed as  $d_H$ .

To prove that the hyperbolic metric  $d_H$  defined on surface  $\Sigma$  satisfies property (1), consider the modified curve  $\gamma$  where all strands within the open disk  $\Sigma \setminus X$  are straightened. Note that any geodesic path not intersecting  $X$  has length at most  $O(\log g)$  (which is the diameter of the fundamental polygon with respect to  $d_H$ ). By Lemma 6.1 this implies that the length of the modified  $\gamma$  is at most  $O(n \log g)$ , thus the hyperbolic metric  $d_H$  satisfies property (1).

As for property (2), consider any non-contractible cycle  $\sigma$  on surface  $\Sigma$ ; without loss of generality assume  $\sigma$  to be a geodesic. If we lift  $\sigma$  to the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$  such that the lift  $\hat{\sigma}$  starts and ends on the lift  $\hat{X}$  of the cut graph  $X$ , because  $\sigma$  is non-contractible, the two arcs of  $\hat{X}$  where  $\hat{\sigma}$  starts and ends respectively are two different translates of the same arc in  $X$ . Consider the sequence of arcs  $a_0, \dots, a_k$  in  $\hat{X}$  intersected by  $\hat{\sigma}$ . Because  $\sigma$  is a geodesic and every vertex in  $\hat{X}$  has degree 3, one has  $a_i \neq a_{i+1}$  and no  $a_i$  is incident to  $a_{i+2}$  for all  $i$ . If for some  $i$  the two arcs  $a_i$  and  $a_{i+1}$  are not incident to each other (that is,  $a_i$  and  $a_{i+1}$  do not share a vertex in  $\hat{X}$ ), then by hyperbolic trigonometry the length of the subpath of  $\hat{\sigma}$  connecting  $a_i$  to  $a_{i+1}$  is at least the length of the side of the polygon, which is at least 1. Otherwise, if  $a_i$  is incident to  $a_{i+1}$  and  $a_{i+1}$  is incident to  $a_{i+2}$ , as  $a_i$  is not incident to  $a_{i+2}$ , by reflecting the subpath of  $\hat{\sigma}$  from  $a_{i+1}$  to  $a_{i+2}$  to the tile that contains  $a_i$  and  $a_{i+1}$  we again have the length of the subpath of  $\hat{\sigma}$  lower-bounded by the length of  $a_{i+1}$ . This proves that  $d_H$  satisfies property (2).

**Tortuosity.** Let  $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$  be a curve. Denote  $D(x, r)$  the disk centered at point  $x$  with radius  $r$  (with respect the metric  $d_H$ ). Let  $I_t$  be the maximal interval of  $[0, 1]$  containing  $t$  such that  $\gamma(I_t)$  lies in the disk  $D(\gamma(t), 1/2)$ .

<sup>2</sup>To be accurate, the length of the side is equal to  $2 \cosh^{-1}(\sin(2\pi/6) \cdot \cos(2\pi/(24g - 12)))$ .

The **tortuosity** [125] of curve  $\gamma$  at point  $t$ , denoted as  $\text{tort}(\gamma, t)$ , is the difference between the length of the subpath of  $\gamma$  lying in the disk of radius  $1/2$  centered at  $\gamma(t)$  and the geodesic distance between the two endpoints of the subpath. Formally,

$$\text{tort}(\gamma, t) := |\gamma(I_t)| - d_H(\gamma(I_t(0)), \gamma(I_t(1))).$$

Practically speaking, the tortuosity of  $\gamma$  at point  $t$  is equal the improvement one will make after straightening the disk  $D(\gamma(t), 1/2)$ . The **tortuosity** of curve  $\gamma$  is the supremum of  $\text{tort}(\gamma, t)$  where  $t$  ranges over  $[0, 1]$ . The goal of the following lemma is to prove that when the tortuosity of the curve is small, then the whole curve is  $\varepsilon$ -close to its unique geodesic. In other words, as long as the curve  $\gamma$  has points that are at least  $\varepsilon$  away from the geodesic, we can always find a disk centered at some point of  $\gamma$  whose straightening will decrease the length of  $\gamma$  by at least fixed amount, depending only on  $\varepsilon$ .

**Lemma 6.12.** *For any small  $\varepsilon > 0$ , if the tortuosity of  $\gamma$  is at most  $O(\varepsilon^2)$ , then  $\gamma$  is  $\varepsilon$ -close to the geodesic  $\gamma_*$ .*

**Proof:** We will prove the contrapositive statement using hyperbolic trigonometry. For the sake of generality we temporarily treat  $r$  as a variable; at the end of the calculation one just plugin  $r := 1/2$ . Here we list two identities that will be used in our proof.

- (1) For any real number  $x$ ,  $\sinh(2x) = 2 \sinh x \cosh x$  and  $(\cosh(x))^2 - (\sinh(x))^2 = 1$ .
- (2) Given an arbitrary *Saccheri quadrilateral* with the lengths of the legs, base, and top as  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  respectively, then

$$\sinh \frac{c}{2} = \cosh a \cdot \sinh \frac{b}{2}.$$

Lift both  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma_*$  to the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$ ; denote the resulting paths as  $\hat{\gamma}$  and  $\hat{\gamma}_*$  accordingly. Let  $t$  be a point in  $[0, 1]$  such that  $\hat{\gamma}(t)$  has maximum distance to  $\hat{\gamma}_*$ . Refer to point  $\hat{\gamma}(t)$  as  $p$  and the maximum distance as  $\delta$ ; by assumption  $\delta$  is at least  $\varepsilon$ . Our goal is to prove that the tortuosity of  $\gamma$  at  $t$  is at least  $\Omega(\varepsilon^2)$ . Denote the two endpoints of the maximal subpath of  $\hat{\gamma}$  in  $D(p, r)$  containing  $p$  as  $x$  and  $y$ , and the maximal subpath itself as  $\hat{\gamma}[x, y]$ . One has

$$\text{tort}(\gamma, t) = |\hat{\gamma}[x, y]| - d_H(x, y) \geq 2r - d_H(x, y).$$

Here without loss of generality we will assume that  $x$  and  $y$  are both at distance exactly  $\delta$  to  $\hat{\gamma}_*$ . The reason one can make such an assumption is because, as one moves  $x$  and  $y$  perpendicularly along the geodesics away from  $\hat{\gamma}_*$ ,  $d_H(x, y)$  increases and therefore the tortuosity when both  $x$  and  $y$  are at distance  $\delta$  is a lower bound to the original tortuosity.

What is left is to upper bound  $d_H(x, y)$ . Let  $x^*$ ,  $p^*$ , and  $y^*$  be the points on  $\hat{\gamma}_*$  that have minimum distance to  $x$ ,  $p$ , and  $y$  respectively. By identity (2) one has

$$\sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh(d_H(x^*, y^*)/2)$$

and

$$\sinh(r/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh(d_H(x^*, y^*)/4).$$

The second equality gives us

$$d_H(x^*, y^*)/2 = 2 \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right),$$

2005 plug back to the first equation one has

$$2006 \quad \sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh \left( 2 \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \right).$$

2007 Apply identity (1) on the first hyperbolic sine, one has

$$\begin{aligned} 2008 \quad \sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) &= \cosh \delta \cdot 2 \cdot \sinh \left( \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \right) \cdot \cosh \left( \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \right) \\ 2009 \quad &= \cosh \delta \cdot 2 \cdot \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \cdot \cosh \left( \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \right) \\ 2010 \quad &= 2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left( 1 + \left( \sinh \left( \sinh^{-1} \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right) \right) \right)^2 \right)^{1/2} \\ 2011 \quad &= 2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left( 1 + \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right)^2 \right)^{1/2}. \\ 2012 \end{aligned}$$

2013 This shows that

$$2014 \quad d_H(x, y) = 2 \cdot \sinh^{-1} \left( 2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left( 1 + \left( \frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right)^2 \right)^{1/2} \right) \\ 2015$$

2016 by identity (2). Taylor expand  $d_H(x, y)$  around  $\delta = 0$  gives us

$$2017 \quad d_H(x, y) = 2r - \frac{(\sinh(r/2))^3}{\cosh(r/2) \cdot \cosh(r)} \delta^2 + O(\delta^4),$$

2018 and therefore  $tort(\gamma, t) \geq \Omega(\delta^2) \geq \Omega(\varepsilon^2)$ .  $\square$

2019 **Exposing points outside the neighborhood.** Now we proceed to bound  $\varepsilon$  so that the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of the  
2020 geodesic  $\gamma_*$  does not cover the whole surface  $\Sigma$ .

2021 **Lemma 6.13.** *Let  $\gamma$  be an  $n$ -vertex curve on  $\Sigma$ . Then the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $\gamma_*$  does not cover the whole surface  $\Sigma$   
2022 if  $\varepsilon$  is at most  $O(g/(n \log g))$ .*

2023 **Proof:** Given any curve  $\gamma$  with the corresponding unique (close) geodesic  $\gamma_*$  on surface  $\Sigma$  with the constructed  
2024 hyperbolic metric  $d_H$ , the length of  $\gamma_*$  is at most  $O(n \log g)$  by property (1). For small enough  $\varepsilon$ , the area of the  
2025  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of a curve with length  $\ell$  is at most  $O(\varepsilon \ell)$ .<sup>3</sup> The area of the surface is precisely  $(4g - 4)\pi$ . (This  
2026 follows directly from Gauss-Bonnet theorem which is independent to the hyperbolic metric up to scaling.)<sup>4</sup> This  
2027 implies that for the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $\gamma_*$  to cover the whole surface  $\Sigma$ , the following holds:

$$2028 \quad \varepsilon \geq \frac{(4g - 4)\pi}{O(n \log g)} \geq \Omega \left( \frac{g}{n \log g} \right)$$

2029 In other words, if we set  $\varepsilon \leq O(g/(n \log g))$ , then the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $\gamma_*$  cannot cover the whole surface  $\Sigma$ ,  
2030 thus proving the lemma.  $\square$

---

<sup>3</sup>To see this, cover the neighborhood with kite-like *Lambert quadrilaterals* with length of the short sides as  $\varepsilon$ . The only acute angle  $\alpha$  of the quadrilateral is equal to  $\arccos((\sinh \varepsilon)^2)$ . The area of the quadrilateral is equal to the angle deficit, which is  $\pi/2 - \alpha$ . In combine the area of the quadrilateral is at most  $O(\varepsilon^2)$ , and thus the total area of the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood on  $\Sigma$  is at most  $O(\varepsilon^2 \cdot \ell/\varepsilon) = O(\varepsilon \ell)$ .

<sup>4</sup>Alternatively, one can derive the area directly: divide the fundamental polygon into  $12g - 6$  triangles by drawing straight-lines from the center of the polygon to all vertices, and use the area formula for triangles.

2031 Basmajian, Parlier, and Souto [20] showed that for any fixed genus  $g$ , the  $O(1/n)$  bound in Lemma 6.13 is  
2032 tight up to logarithmic factors.

2033 **Putting it together.** Now we are ready to prove Lemma 6.10. Consider the set of disks centered at each point  
2034 on the curve with radius  $1/2$ , which is smaller than half the systole by property (2); therefore all such disks are  
2035 embedded in  $\Sigma$ . Straighten any disk using Lemma 6.11 if the tortuosity of the center point is at least  $\varepsilon^2$ . Once  
2036 every point on  $\gamma$  has tortuosity less than  $\varepsilon^2$ , by Lemma 6.12 the curve  $\gamma$  now lies in the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of  $\gamma_*$ .

2037 Straighten a disk takes  $O(n^2)$  moves using Lemma 6.11. The tortuosity at a center of each disk is a lower  
2038 bound on the difference between the lengths of the curve  $\gamma$  before and after straightening. From property (1) of  
2039 the hyperbolic metric  $d_H$  the length of  $\gamma$  is at most  $O(n \log g)$ . Every time a disk is straightened the length of the  
2040 curve  $\gamma$  will drop by at least  $\varepsilon^2$ . Since  $\gamma$  is noncontractible, the length of any curve homotopic to  $\gamma$  is at least the  
2041 systole, which is  $\Omega(1)$  by property (2). Therefore at most  $O(n \log g / \varepsilon^2)$  disks will be straightened before every point  
2042 has tortuosity less than  $\varepsilon^2$ . In total at most  $O(n^3 \log g / \varepsilon^2)$  homotopy moves are performed. From Lemma 6.13,  
2043 setting  $\varepsilon := O(g/(n \log g))$  concludes the proof of Lemma 6.10.



# Chapter 7

## Electrical Transformations

2044

*I believe in love at first sight.*

2045

*You want that connection, and then you want some problems.*

2046

— Keanu Reeves

2047

2048

2049

2050

2051

In this section we explore the close relationship between electrical transformations for graphs and homotopy moves for curves on arbitrary surfaces. We start with some possible different definitions of electrical transformations performed on graphs with embeddings. Then we focus on the most restrictive version—the *facial* electrical transformations—and work with them at the level of medial multicurves. Quantitative connections between such transformations and the homotopy moves are the main focus of the rest of the section. We conclude our discussion of the connection with an application, by providing tight lower bounds on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce plane graphs with or without terminals using results we derived in previous chapters.

2052

### 7.1 Types of Electrical Transformations

*Electrical transformations* defined on general graphs consist of the following set of local operations performed on any graph:

2055

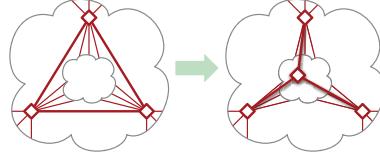
- *Leaf contraction*: Contract the edge incident to a vertex of degree 1.
- *Loop deletion*: Delete the edge of a loop.
- *Series reduction*: Contract either edge incident to a vertex of degree 2.
- *Parallel reduction*: Delete one of a pair of parallel edges.
- *$Y \rightarrow \Delta$  transformation*: Delete a vertex of degree 3 and connect its neighbors with three new edges.
- *$\Delta \rightarrow Y$  transformation*: Delete the edges of a 3-cycle and join the vertices of the cycle to a new vertex.

We distinguish between three increasingly general types of electrical transformations on graphs embedded on a surface: *facial*, *crossing-free*, and *arbitrary*.

An electrical transformation in a graph  $G$  embedded on a surface  $\Sigma$  is *facial* if any deleted cycle is a face of  $G$ . All leaf contractions, series reductions, and  $Y \rightarrow \Delta$  transformations are facial, but loop deletions, parallel reductions, and  $\Delta \rightarrow Y$  transformations may not be facial. As we have seen in the introduction and preliminaries (Sections 1.2 and 2.5.2), facial electrical transformations form three dual pairs, as shown in Figure 1.2; for example, any series reduction in  $G$  is equivalent to a parallel reduction in the dual graph  $G^*$ .

An electrical transformation in  $G$  is *crossing-free* if it preserves the embeddability of the underlying graph into the same surface. Equivalently, an electrical transformation is crossing-free if the vertices of the cycle deleted by the transformation are all incident to a common face (in the given embedding) of  $G$ . All facial electrical transformations are trivially crossing-free, as are all loop deletions and parallel reductions. If the graph embeds

in the plane then crossing-free electrical transformations are also called *planar*. (For ease of presentation, we assume throughout this chapter that plane graphs are actually embedded on the *sphere* instead of the plane.) The only non-crossing-free electrical transformation is a  $\Delta \rightarrow Y$  transformation whose three vertices are *not* incident to a common face; any such transformation introduces a  $K_{3,3}$ -minor into the graph, connecting the three vertices of the  $\Delta$  to an interior vertex, an exterior vertex, and the new  $Y$  vertex.



**Figure 7.1.** A non-planar  $\Delta \rightarrow Y$  transformation.

## 7.2 Connection Between Electrical and Homotopy Moves

Recall that facial electrical transformations in any plane graph  $G$  correspond to local operations in the medial graph  $G^\times$  known as the *medial electrical moves*; we refer them as *electrical moves* for short in this chapter (see Figure 1.3).

For any connected multicurve (or 4-regular graph)  $\gamma$  on surface  $\Sigma$ ,

- let  $X(\gamma)$  denote the minimum number of electrical moves required to tighten  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ ,
- let  $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$  denote the minimum number of homotopy moves required to tighten  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ , without ever increase the number of vertices. In other words, no  $0 \rightarrow 1$  and  $0 \rightarrow 2$  moves are allowed.
- let  $H(\gamma)$  denote the minimum number of homotopy moves required to tighten  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$ .

As we mentioned in Section 6.4, de Graaf and Schrijver [125] proved that any multicurve  $\gamma$  can be tightened using monotonic homotopy moves, which implies that  $H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$  if and only if  $H(\gamma) = 0$ . In other words, standard homotopy moves and monotonic homotopy moves share the same set of target multicurves with minimum number of vertices. Now by definition one has  $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$  for any multicurve  $\gamma$  on surface  $\Sigma$ .

Tightening curves using electrical moves is a more difficult problem than tightening curves using homotopy moves. Modulo some conjectures we will discuss shortly, in the following subsections we argue that the number of electrical moves required is polynomially-related to the number of *monotonic* homotopy moves required.

As initial evidence, both Steinitz's algorithm and Feo-Provan's algorithm can easily be adapted to simplify planar curves monotonically, simply by replacing each  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move encountered with a  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move and recursing. A subtlety here is that we do not know *a priori* whether tightening a multicurve using electrical moves will result in the same multicurve as tightening using homotopy moves (or whether the two tightened multicurves even have the same number of vertices). Notice that we don't have such a problem in the plane as all planar multicurves can be tightened to simple curves using either electrical or homotopy moves. One direction follows from de Graaf and Schrijver [125].

**Lemma 7.1.** *Let  $\gamma$  be a connected multicurve on an arbitrary surface  $\Sigma$ . If  $\gamma$  is electrically tight, then  $\gamma$  is homotopically tight.*

2102 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be a connected multicurve in some arbitrary surface, and suppose  $\gamma$  is not homotopically tight. Result  
2103 of de Graaf and Schrijver [125] implies that  $\gamma$  can be tightened by a finite sequence of homotopy moves that never  
2104 increases the number of vertices. In particular, applying some finite sequence of 3→3 moves to  $\gamma$  creates either an  
2105 empty monogon, which can be removed by a 1→0 move, or an empty bigon, which can be removed by either a  
2106 2→0 move or a 2→1 move. Thus,  $\gamma$  is not e-tight.  $\square$

2107 The main obstacle in showing the opposite direction is that we don't have a similar monotonicity result like de  
2108 Graaf and Schrijver [125] for electrical moves on arbitrary surfaces. In Sections 7.2.2 and 7.2.3 the monotonicity  
2109 results are established for both planar and annular multicurves, which implies that the two types of tightness  
2110 are indeed equivalent for those multicurves. We conjecture that the same holds for arbitrary multicurve on any  
2111 surface.

2112 **Conjecture 7.1.** *Any multicurve on any surface  $\Sigma$  is electrically tight if and only if it is homotopically tight.*

2113 Assume Conjecture 7.1 holds, we can formally compare the number of electrical moves to the number of  
2114 homotopy moves required to tighten a multicurve. The following lemma demonstrates that monotonic homotopy  
2115 moves are indeed closely related to electrical moves.

2116 **Lemma 7.2.** *Assume Conjecture 7.1 holds. Fix an arbitrary surface  $\Sigma$ . Let  $f(n)$  be a non-decreasing function. If*  
2117  $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \leq f(n)$  *holds for all multicurves  $\gamma$  on  $\Sigma$  with  $n$  vertices, then  $X(\gamma) \leq n \cdot f(n)$  also holds for all  $\gamma$ .*

2118 **Proof:** Given a minimum-length sequence of monotonic homotopy moves that tightens  $\gamma$ . If  $H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$ , assuming  
2119 Conjecture 7.1 one has  $X(\gamma) = 0$  as well and thus the statement trivially holds. Otherwise, consider the first move  
2120 in the sequence that decreases the number of vertices in  $\gamma$  (that is, either a 1→0 or 2→0 move). Replace the 2→0  
2121 move with a 2→1 if needed, one arrives at a curve  $\gamma'$  that has strictly less vertices than  $\gamma$ . The number of homotopy  
2122 moves in the sequence from the original  $\gamma$  to  $\gamma'$  is at most  $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$ . Now by induction on the number of vertices,

$$\begin{aligned} X(\gamma) &\leq X(\gamma') + H^\downarrow(\gamma) \\ &\leq (n-1) \cdot H^\downarrow(\gamma') + H^\downarrow(\gamma) \\ &\leq (n-1) \cdot f(n-1) + f(n) \\ &\leq n \cdot f(n), \end{aligned}$$

2128 which proves the lemma.  $\square$

2129 After presenting all the necessary terminologies, in Section 7.2.4 we will introduce the *strong smoothing*  
2130 *conjecture* (Conjecture 7.3) which implies both Conjecture 7.1 (and thus Lemma 7.2 without the assumption), and  
2131 the opposite direction of the inequality between  $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$  and  $X(\gamma)$  (see Lemma 7.16). We discuss other consequences  
2132 and partial attempts towards proving Conjecture 7.1 in the same section.

2133 Before that, we provide evidence to the conjecture(s) in Section 7.2.2 and Section 7.2.3 by showing that for  
2134 arbitrary planar and annular curves, both Conjecture 7.1 and the inequality  $X(\gamma) + O(n) \geq H^\downarrow(\gamma)$  holds. This  
2135 demonstrates that  $X(\gamma)$  and  $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$  are at most a linear factor away from each other for planar or annular curve  $\gamma$ .

### 2136 7.2.1 Smoothing Lemma—Inductive case

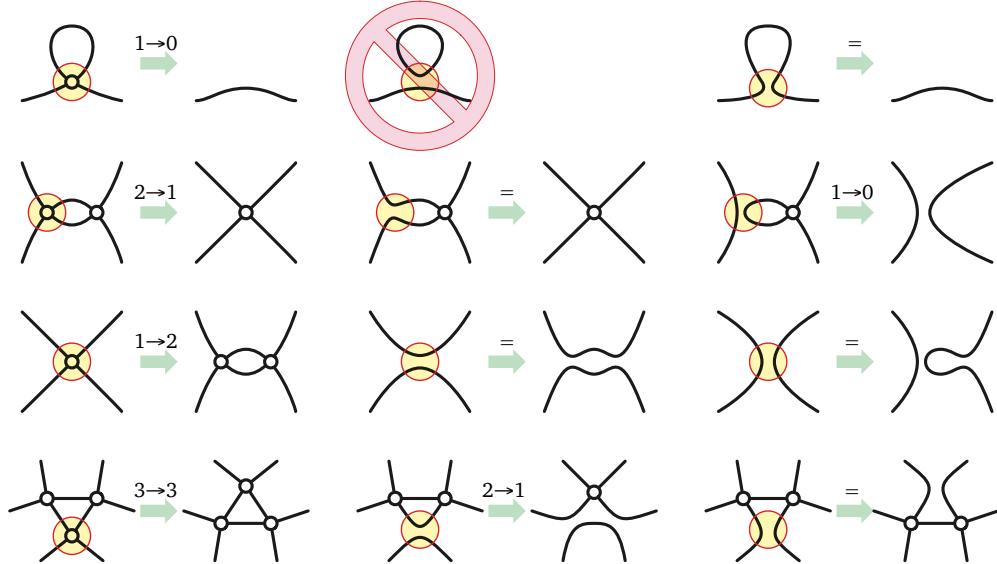
2137 The following key lemma follows from close reading of proofs by Truemper [242, Lemma 4] and several others [12,  
2138 115, 181, 184] that every minor of a  $\Delta Y$ -reducible graph is also  $\Delta Y$ -reducible. Our proof most closely resembles

an argument of Gitler [115, Lemma 2.3.3], but restated in terms of electrical moves on multicurves to simplify the case analysis. In his PhD thesis [122, Proposition 5.1], de Graaf provided a proof to some special case of the lemma at the level of medial curves.

**Lemma 7.3.** *Let  $\gamma$  be any connected multicurve on surface  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be a connected smoothing of  $\gamma$ . Applying any sequence of electrical moves to  $\gamma$  to obtain  $\gamma'$ ; let  $x$  be the number of electrical moves in the sequence. Then one can apply a similar sequence of electrical moves of length at most  $x$  to  $\check{\gamma}$  to obtain a (possibly trivial) connected smoothing  $\check{\gamma}'$  of  $\gamma'$ .*

**Proof:** We prove the statement by induction on the number of electrical moves in the sequence and the number of smoothed vertices. If  $\check{\gamma} = \gamma$  then the statement trivially holds. Otherwise, we first consider the special case where  $\check{\gamma}$  is obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing a single vertex  $x$ . Without loss of generality let  $\gamma'$  be the result of the first electrical move. There are two nontrivial cases to consider.

First, suppose the move from  $\gamma$  to  $\gamma'$  does not involve the smoothed vertex  $x$ . Then we can apply the same move to  $\check{\gamma}$  to obtain a new multicurve  $\check{\gamma}'$ ; the same multicurve can also be obtained from  $\gamma'$  by smoothing  $x$ .



**Figure 7.2.** Cases for the proof of the Lemma 7.3; the circled vertex is  $x$ .

Now suppose the first move does involve  $x$ . In this case, we can apply at most one electrical move to  $\check{\gamma}$  to obtain a (possibly trivial) smoothing  $\check{\gamma}'$  of  $\gamma'$ . There are eight subcases to consider, shown in Figure 7.2. One subcase for the  $0\rightarrow 1$  move is impossible, because  $\check{\gamma}$  is connected. In the remaining  $0\rightarrow 1$  subcase and one  $2\rightarrow 1$  subcase, the curves  $\check{\gamma}$ ,  $\check{\gamma}'$ , and  $\gamma'$  are all isomorphic. In all remaining subcases,  $\check{\gamma}'$  is a connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma'$ .

Finally, we consider the more general case where  $\check{\gamma}$  is obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing more than one vertex. Let  $\tilde{\gamma}$  be any intermediate curve, obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing just one of the vertices that were smoothed to obtain  $\check{\gamma}$ . As  $\check{\gamma}$  is a connected smoothing of  $\tilde{\gamma}$ , the curve  $\tilde{\gamma}$  itself must be connected too. Our earlier argument implies that there is a sequence of electrical moves that changes  $\tilde{\gamma}$  to a smoothing  $\tilde{\gamma}'$  of  $\gamma'$ . The inductive hypothesis implies that there is a sequence of electrical moves that changes  $\check{\gamma}$  to a smoothing  $\check{\gamma}'$  of  $\tilde{\gamma}'$ , which is itself a smoothing of  $\gamma'$ . This completes the proof.  $\square$

2163 As a remark, using a similar argument one can recover a result by Newmann-Coto [182]: any homotopy  
 2164 from multicurve  $\gamma$  to another multicurve  $\gamma'$  that never removes vertices can be turned into a homotopy from a  
 2165 smoothing of  $\gamma$  to a smoothing of  $\gamma'$ . Chambers and Liokumovich [40] studied a similar problem where one wants  
 2166 to convert a homotopy between two *simple* curves on surface into an *isotopy*, without increasing the length of any  
 2167 intermediate curve by too much. They showed that the desired isotopy can be obtained from a clever Euler-tour  
 2168 argument on the graph of all possible complete smoothings of the intermediate curves.

### 2169 7.2.2 In the Plane

2170 The main result of this subsection is that the number of *homotopy* moves required to simplify a closed curve in  
 2171 the plane is a lower bound on the number of *electrical moves* required to simplify the same closed curve. Our  
 2172 result makes explicit the quantitative bound implicit in the work of Noble and Welsh [184], and most of our proofs  
 2173 closely follow theirs.

2174 We also establish two other results on the fly—the function  $X(\cdot)$  never increases under smoothings, and the  
 2175 monotonicity of electrical moves—which are interesting in their own right. The fact that every planar curve can be  
 2176 simplified using either electrical or homotopy moves makes the proofs in this subsection slightly easier comparing  
 2177 to the annular case (see Section 7.2.3).

2178 **Lemma 7.4.**  $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$  for every connected smoothing  $\check{\gamma}$  of every connected multicurve  $\gamma$  in the plane.

2179 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be a connected multicurve, and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be a connected smoothing of  $\gamma$ . If  $\gamma$  is already simple, the  
 2180 lemma is vacuously true. Otherwise, applying a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies  $\gamma$ . By  
 2181 Lemma 7.3 there is another sequence of electrical moves of length at most  $X(\gamma)$  that simplifies  $\check{\gamma}$ . We immediately  
 2182 have  $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$  and the lemma is proved.  $\square$

2183 **Lemma 7.5.** For every connected multicurve  $\gamma$ , there is a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that  
 2184 simplifies  $\gamma$  to a simple closed curve that does not contain  $0 \rightarrow 1$  or  $1 \rightarrow 2$  moves.

2185 **Proof:** Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies an arbitrary connected multicurve  $\gamma$   
 2186 to a simple closed curve. For any integer  $i \geq 0$ , let  $\gamma_i$  denote the result of the first  $i$  moves in this sequence; in  
 2187 particular,  $\gamma_0 = \gamma$  and  $\gamma_{X(\gamma)}$  is a simple closed curve. Minimality of the simplification sequence implies that  
 2188  $X(\gamma_i) = X(\gamma) - i$  for all  $i$ ; in particular,  $X(\gamma_i)$  decreases as  $i$  grows. Now let  $i$  be an arbitrary index such that  $\gamma_i$   
 2189 has one more vertex than  $\gamma_{i-1}$ . Then  $\gamma_{i-1}$  is a connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma_i$ , so Lemma 7.4 implies that  
 2190  $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$ , giving us a contradiction.  $\square$

2191 **Lemma 7.6.**  $X(\gamma) \geq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$  for every closed curve  $\gamma$  in the plane.

2192 **Proof:** The second inequality is straightforward. The proof of the first inequality proceeds by induction on  $X(\gamma)$ .

2193 Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve. If  $X(\gamma) = 0$ , then  $\gamma$  is already simple, so  $H^{\downarrow}(\gamma) = 0$ . Otherwise, consider a minimum-  
 2194 length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies  $\gamma$  to a simple closed curve. Lemma 7.5 implies that we can  
 2195 assume that the first move in the sequence is neither  $0 \rightarrow 1$  nor  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . If the first move is  $1 \rightarrow 0$  or  $3 \rightarrow 3$ , the theorem  
 2196 immediately follows by induction.

2197 The only interesting first move is  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . Let  $\gamma'$  be the result of this  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move, and let  $\gamma^{\circ}$  be the result of the  
 2198 corresponding  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move. The minimality of the sequence implies that  $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$ , and we trivially have  
 2199  $H^{\downarrow}(\gamma) \leq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma^{\circ}) + 1$ . Because  $\gamma$  consists of *one* single curve,  $\gamma^{\circ}$  is also a single curve and is therefore connected. The

2200 curve  $\gamma^\circ$  is also a proper smoothing of  $\gamma'$ , so the Lemma 7.4 implies  $X(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma') < X(\gamma)$ . Finally, the inductive  
 2201 hypothesis implies that  $X(\gamma^\circ) \geq H^\downarrow(\gamma^\circ)$ , and therefore

$$H^\downarrow(\gamma) - 1 \leq H^\downarrow(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma') = X(\gamma) - 1$$

2203 which completes the proof.  $\square$

### 2204 7.2.3 In the Annulus

2205 **Tight curves on the annulus.** To prove similar results in the annulus, first we have to prove Conjecture 7.1 for  
 2206 annular multicurves. Recall that the *depth* of any annular multicurve  $\gamma$  is the minimum number of times a path  
 2207 from one boundary to the other crosses  $\gamma$ . In many ways, depth can be viewed an unsigned version of winding  
 2208 number. Just as the winding number around the boundaries is a complete homotopy invariant for curves in the  
 2209 annulus, the depth turns out to be a complete invariant for electrical moves on the annular multicurve.

2210 **Lemma 7.7.** *Electrical moves do not change the depth of any connected multicurve in the annulus.*

2211 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be a connected multicurve in the annulus. For any face of  $\gamma$  that could be deleted by a electrical  
 2212 move, exhaustive case analysis implies that there is a shortest path in the dual of  $\gamma$  between the two boundary  
 2213 faces of  $\gamma$  that avoids that face.  $\square$

2214 For any integer  $d > 0$ , let  $\alpha_d$  denote the unique closed curve in the annulus with  $d - 1$  vertices and winding  
 2215 number  $d$ . Up to isotopy, this curve can be parametrized in the plane as

$$\alpha_d(\theta) := ((\cos(\theta) + 2)\cos(d\theta), (\cos(\theta) + 2)\sin(d\theta)).$$

2217 In the notation of Section 3.1.1,  $\alpha_d$  is the *flat torus knot*  $T(d, 1)$ .

2218 **Lemma 7.8.** *For any integer  $d > 0$ , the curve  $\alpha_d$  is both h-tight and e-tight.*

2219 **Proof:** Every connected multicurve in the annulus with either winding number  $d$  or depth  $d$  has at least  $d + 1$   
 2220 faces (including the faces containing the boundaries of the annulus) and therefore, by Euler's formula, has at least  
 2221  $d - 1$  vertices.  $\square$

2222 **Lemma 7.9.** *If  $\gamma$  is an h-tight connected multicurve in the annulus, then  $\gamma = \alpha_d$  for some integer  $d$ .*

2223 **Proof:** A multicurve in the annulus is h-tight if and only if its constituent curves are h-tight *and disjoint*. Thus,  
 2224 any *connected* h-tight multicurve is actually a single closed curve. Any two curves in the annulus with the same  
 2225 winding number are homotopic [142]. Finally, up to isotopy,  $\alpha_d$  is the only closed curve in the annulus with  
 2226 winding number  $d$  and  $d - 1$  vertices [135, Lemma 1.12].  $\square$

2227 The following corollaries are now immediate by Lemma 7.1.

2228 **Corollary 7.1.** *A connected multicurve  $\gamma$  in the annulus is e-tight if and only if  $\gamma = \alpha_{\text{depth}(\gamma)}$ ; therefore, any  
 2229 multicurve  $\gamma$  is e-tight if and only if  $\gamma$  is h-tight.*

2230 **Corollary 7.2.** *Let  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  be two connected multicurves in the annulus. Then  $\gamma$  can be transformed into  $\gamma'$  by  
 2231 electrical moves if and only if  $\text{depth}(\gamma) = \text{depth}(\gamma')$ .*

2232      Equipped with the understanding of tight annular curves, we are ready to extend the results in Section 7.2.2  
 2233      to the annulus.

2234      **Lemma 7.10.** *For any connected smoothing  $\check{\gamma}$  of any connected multicurve  $\gamma$  in the annulus, we have  $X(\check{\gamma}) +$   
 2235       $\frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$ .*

2236      **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be an arbitrary connected multicurve in the annulus, and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be an arbitrary connected smoothing  
 2237      of  $\gamma$ . Without loss of generality, we can assume that  $\gamma$  is non-simple, since otherwise the lemma is vacuous.

2238      If  $\gamma$  is already e-tight, then  $\gamma = \alpha_d$  for some integer  $d \geq 2$  by Corollary 7.1. (The curves  $\alpha_0$  and  $\alpha_1$  are simple.)  
 2239      First, suppose  $\check{\gamma}$  is a connected smoothing of  $\gamma$  obtained by smoothing a single vertex  $x$ . The smoothed curve  $\check{\gamma}$   
 2240      contains a single monogon if  $x$  is the innermost or outermost vertex of  $\gamma$ , or a single bigon otherwise. Applying  
 2241      one  $1 \rightarrow 0$  or  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move transforms  $\check{\gamma}$  into the curve  $\alpha_{d-2}$ , which is e-tight by Lemma 7.8. Thus we have  $X(\check{\gamma}) = 1$   
 2242      and  $\text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) = d - 2$ , which implies  $X(\check{\gamma}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) = X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$ . As for the general case when  $\check{\gamma}$  is  
 2243      obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing more than one vertices, the statement follows from the previous case by induction  
 2244      on the number of smoothed vertices.

2245      If  $\gamma$  is not e-tight, applying a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens  $\gamma$  into some curve  $\gamma'$ .  
 2246      By Lemma 7.3 there is another sequence of electrical moves of length at most  $X(\gamma)$  that tightens  $\check{\gamma}$  to some  
 2247      connected smoothing  $\check{\gamma}'$  of  $\gamma'$ , which can be further tightened electrically to an e-tight curve using arguments in the  
 2248      previous paragraph because  $\gamma'$  is e-tight. This implies that  $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2}(\text{depth}(\gamma') - \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}'))$ . By Lemma 7.7,  
 2249       $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$  have the same depth, and  $\check{\gamma}$  and  $\check{\gamma}'$  have the same depth. Therefore  $X(\check{\gamma}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$   
 2250      and the lemma is proved.  $\square$

2251      **Lemma 7.11.** *For every connected multicurve  $\gamma$  in the annulus, there is a minimum-length sequence of electrical  
 2252      moves that tightens  $\gamma$  to  $\alpha_{\text{depth}(\gamma)}$  without  $0 \rightarrow 1$  or  $1 \rightarrow 2$  moves.*

2253      **Proof:** Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens an arbitrary connected multicurve  $\gamma$   
 2254      in the annulus. For any integer  $i \geq 0$ , let  $\gamma_i$  denote the result of the first  $i$  moves in this sequence. Suppose  $\gamma_i$  has  
 2255      one more vertex than  $\gamma_{i-1}$  for some index  $i$ . Then  $\gamma_{i-1}$  is a connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma_i$ , and  $\text{depth}(\gamma_i) =$   
 2256       $\text{depth}(\gamma_{i-1})$  by Lemma 7.7; so Lemma 7.10 implies that  $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$ , contradicting our assumption that the  
 2257      reduction sequence has minimum length.  $\square$

2258      **Lemma 7.12.**  $X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma) \geq H^\downarrow(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$  for every closed curve  $\gamma$  in the annulus.

2259      **Proof:** Again the second inequality is straightforward, as explained at the start of the section. Let  $\gamma$  be a closed  
 2260      curve in the annulus. If  $\gamma$  is already e-tight, then  $X(\gamma) = H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$  by Lemma 7.1, so the lemma is trivial.  
 2261      Otherwise, consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens  $\gamma$ . By Lemma 7.11, we can  
 2262      assume that the first move in the sequence is neither  $0 \rightarrow 1$  nor  $1 \rightarrow 2$ . If the first move is  $1 \rightarrow 0$  or  $3 \rightarrow 3$ , the theorem  
 2263      immediately follows by induction on  $X(\gamma)$ , since by Lemma 7.7 neither of these moves changes the depth of the  
 2264      curve.

2265      The only interesting first move is  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . Let  $\gamma'$  be the result of this  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move, and let  $\gamma^\circ$  be the result if we  
 2266      perform the  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move on the same empty bigon instead. The minimality of the sequence implies  $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$ ,  
 2267      and we trivially have  $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \leq H^\downarrow(\gamma^\circ) + 1$ . Because  $\gamma$  is a single curve,  $\gamma^\circ$  is also a single curve and therefore a  
 2268      connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma'$ . Thus, Lemma 7.7, Lemma 7.10, and induction on the number of vertices imply

$$2269 \quad X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma') + 1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&\geq X(\gamma^\circ) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma^\circ) + 1 \\
&\geq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma^\circ) + 1 \\
&\geq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma),
\end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof.  $\square$

### 7.2.4 Towards Connection between Electrical and Monotonic Homotopy Moves

In this subsection we discuss some attempts to establish a formal connection between electrical and monotonic homotopy moves. In particular, we formulate two versions of *smoothing conjecture* that imply both Conjecture 7.1 and the relation between functions  $X$  and  $H^{\downarrow}$ .

A closed curve  $\gamma$  is *primitive* if  $\gamma$  is not homotopic to a proper multiple of some other closed curve. A multicurve is *primitive* if all its constituent curves are primitive. We show equivalence between the following concepts on primitive multicurves. Let  $\gamma$  be a multicurve on an orientable surface  $\Sigma$  such that each constituent curve of  $\gamma$  is primitive. Define the  *$\mu$ -function* as

$$\mu(\gamma, \sigma) := \min_{\substack{\sigma' \sim \sigma \\ \sigma' \pitchfork \gamma}} \text{cr}(\gamma, \sigma'),$$

where  $\text{cr}(\gamma, \sigma')$  is the number of crossing between  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma'$ , and the minimum is ranging over all closed curve  $\sigma'$  homotopic to the given closed curve  $\sigma$  on  $\Sigma$ , intersecting  $\gamma$  transversely.<sup>1</sup> Denote  $\mu_\gamma$  as the single-variable function  $\mu(\gamma, \cdot)$ . The notion of  $\mu$ -function is deeply related to the *representativity* or *facewidth* of a graph studied in topological graph theory [205, 208, 235]. The  $\mu$ -function is invariant under electrical moves and isotopy of  $\gamma$ .

The  $\mu$ -function is a higher-genus analogue to the *depth* function defined in the annulus. The following result that  $\mu$  is invariant under electrical moves can be found in Robertson and Vitray [208]; we sketch a proof for sake of completeness.

**Lemma 7.13** (Robertson and Vitray [208, Proposition 14.4]). *Electrical moves do not change  $\mu_\gamma$  for any multicurve  $\gamma$  on surface  $\Sigma$ .*

**Proof:** For any face of  $\gamma$  intersected by some closed curve  $\sigma$  that could be deleted after an electrical move, exhaustive case analysis implies that there is another closed curve  $\sigma'$  that avoids that face.  $\square$

Multicurve  $\gamma$  satisfies *simplicity conditions* [217] if (1) any lifting of  $\gamma_i$  in the universal cover  $\hat{\Sigma}$  does not self-intersect for any constituent curve  $\gamma_i$  of  $\gamma$ , and (2) any distinct liftings of  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  in  $\hat{\Sigma}$  intersect each other at most once for any pair of (possibly identical) constituent curves  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  of  $\gamma$ . Multicurve  $\gamma$  is *minimally crossing* [217, 219] if each constituent curve of  $\gamma$  has minimum number of self-intersections in its homotopy class, and every pair of constituent curves has minimum intersections with each other, in their own homotopy classes. In notation, one has

$$\text{cr}(\gamma_i) = \min_{\gamma'_i \sim \gamma_i} \text{cr}(\gamma'_i) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{cr}(\gamma_i, \gamma_j) = \min_{\substack{\gamma'_i \sim \gamma_i \\ \gamma'_j \sim \gamma_j}} \text{cr}(\gamma'_i, \gamma'_j)$$

for all constituent curves  $\gamma_i$  and  $\gamma_j$  of  $\gamma$ ;  $\text{cr}(\gamma_i)$  denotes the number of self-intersections of curve  $\gamma_i$ . Multicurve  $\gamma$  is *crossing-tight* [217, 219] if  $\mu_\gamma \neq \mu_{\tilde{\gamma}}$  for any proper smoothing  $\tilde{\gamma}$  of  $\gamma$ .

<sup>1</sup>In Schrijver [219], the  $\mu$ -function is defined with respect to the graph corresponding to  $\gamma$  through medial construction; the function defined here is denoted as  $\mu'$  in his paper.

2304 Our proof of equivalence relies on machineries developed extensively in the sequence of work by de Graaf and  
 2305 Schrijver [123, 124, 125, 216, 217, 218, 219] who did all the weight-lifting. However the original work does not  
 2306 address the problem of relating electrical and homotopy moves.

2307 **Theorem 7.1.** *Let  $\gamma$  be a multicurve on an orientable surface whose constituent curves are all primitive. The  
 2308 following statements are equivalent: (1) Multicurve  $\gamma$  satisfies simplicity conditions, (2)  $\gamma$  is minimally crossing,  
 2309 (3)  $\gamma$  is crossing-tight, (4)  $\gamma$  is e-tight, and (5)  $\gamma$  is h-tight.*

2310 **Proof (sketch):** (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (3): Schrijver [217, Proposition 12] showed that  $\gamma$  satisfies simplicity conditions if  
 2311 and only if  $\gamma$  is minimally crossing and each constituent curve is primitive. Later in the same paper [217, Theorem 5]  
 2312 he also showed that  $\gamma$  is minimally crossing and each constituent curve is primitive if and only if  $\gamma$  is crossing-tight.  
 2313 An alternative proof using the monotonicity of homotopy process can be found in de Graaf's thesis [122].

2314 (3)  $\Rightarrow$  (4): In another paper Schrijver [219, Theorem 2] showed that two crossing-tight multicurves  $\gamma$  and  $\gamma'$   
 2315 can be transformed into each other using only 3 $\rightarrow$ 3 moves if (and only if)  $\mu_\gamma = \mu_{\gamma'}$ . This result implies that if  
 2316 multicurve  $\gamma$  is crossing-tight then  $\gamma$  is e-tight, as electrical moves preserves the  $\mu$ -function by Lemma 7.13.

2317 (4)  $\Rightarrow$  (5): Any e-tight multicurve must be h-tight by de Graaf and Schrijver [125] (see Lemma 7.1).

2318 (5)  $\Rightarrow$  (3): If  $\gamma$  is h-tight and primitive, then by Hass and Scott [135, Lemma 3.4] multicurve  $\gamma$  satisfies  
 2319 simplicity conditions. To elaborate, assume for contradiction that  $\gamma$  violates the simplicity conditions. As  $\gamma$  is  
 2320 h-tight one can push each constituent curve of  $\gamma$  close to its unique geodesic on the surface without even decreases  
 2321 the number of vertices, similar to the algorithm of de Graaf and Schrijver [125]. Therefore all the intersections  
 2322 between lifts of constituent curves of  $\gamma$  remains after the push. The primitiveness of the curve  $\gamma$  guarantees that  
 2323 each lift of any constituent curve does not self-intersect, and two different lifts of the same constituent curve  
 2324 intersects at most once on  $\hat{\Sigma}$ . Between the lifts of two distinct geodesics there is at most one intersection in the  
 2325 universal cover, and thus the same holds for the lifts of two distinct constituent curves of  $\gamma$ .

2326 This concludes the proof. □

2327 Unfortunately Theorem 7.1 does not imply immediately a relation between number of electrical versus  
 2328 homotopy moves required to tighten a multicurve on surface, because primitive multicurves can have non-primitive  
 2329 smoothings. Still, one would hope that some forms of the smoothing lemma hold on general orientable surface,  
 2330 possibly with assumptions on the applicable smoothings.

2331 **Conjecture 7.2.** *Let  $\gamma$  be any connected multicurve on surface  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be a connected smoothing of  $\gamma$ ,  
 2332 satisfying  $\mu_{\check{\gamma}} = \mu_\gamma$ . Then  $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$  holds.*

2333 **Lemma 7.14.** *Assume Conjecture 7.2 holds. For every connected multicurve  $\gamma$ , there is a minimum-length  
 2334 sequence of electrical moves that tightens  $\gamma$  and does not contain 0 $\rightarrow$ 1 or 1 $\rightarrow$ 2 moves.*

2335 **Proof:** Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that reduces an arbitrary connected multicurve  $\gamma$   
 2336 to a simple closed curve. For any integer  $i \geq 0$ , let  $\gamma_i$  denote the result of the first  $i$  moves in this sequence;  
 2337 in particular,  $\gamma_0 = \gamma$  and  $\gamma_{X(\gamma)}$  is a simple closed curve. Minimality of the reduction sequence implies that  
 2338  $X(\gamma_i) = X(\gamma) - i$  for all  $i$ ; in particular,  $X(\gamma_i)$  strictly decreases as  $i$  increases. Now let  $i$  be an arbitrary index such  
 2339 that  $\gamma_i$  has one more vertex than  $\gamma_{i-1}$  after applying either a 0 $\rightarrow$ 1 or 1 $\rightarrow$ 2 move. Then  $\gamma_{i-1}$  is a connected proper  
 2340 smoothing of  $\gamma_i$  satisfying  $\mu_{\gamma_i} = \mu_{\gamma_{i-1}}$ ; so Lemma 7.13 and Conjecture 7.2 imply that  $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$ , giving us a  
 2341 contradiction. □

Using Lemma 7.14, we can show that the two different notions of tightness are indeed equivalent, thus proving Conjecture 7.1.

**Lemma 7.15.** *Conjecture 7.2 implies Conjecture 7.1.*

**Proof:** The only if direction follows directly from Lemma 7.1. Conversely, suppose  $\gamma$  is not e-tight. Lemma 7.14 implies that  $\gamma$  can be tightened by a finite sequence of electrical moves that never increases the number of vertices. In particular, some finite sequence of 3→3 moves to  $\gamma$  reveals either an empty monogon or an empty bigon. Thus,  $\gamma$  is not h-tight.  $\square$

**Strong smoothing conjecture.** We don't have the result corresponding to Lemma 7.6 in general surfaces, because that requires us to prove the following stronger version of the smoothing lemma.

**Conjecture 7.3.** *Let  $\gamma$  be any connected multicurve on surface  $\Sigma$ , and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be a connected smoothing of  $\gamma$ . Then*

$$X(\check{\gamma}) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\check{\gamma}}(\sigma) \leq X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma),$$

for some absolute constant  $C$ , where  $\Gamma_0$  is some finite collection of simple curves on surface  $\Sigma$ .

It is immediate that Conjecture 7.3 implies Conjecture 7.2. Using the strong smoothing conjecture we can prove the analogous result to Lemma 7.6.

**Lemma 7.16.** *Assume Conjecture 7.3 holds, then  $X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma) \geq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$  for any closed curve  $\gamma$ .*

**Proof:** The second inequality is straightforward, as explained in the start of the section. Let  $\gamma$  be a closed curve. If  $\gamma$  is e-tight, then  $\gamma$  is h-tight as well by Lemma 7.1 so the inequality trivially holds. Otherwise, consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens  $\gamma$ . Conjecture 7.3 implies Conjecture 7.2, so by Lemma 7.14 we can assume that the first move in the sequence is neither 0→1 nor 1→2. If the first move is 1→0 or 3→3, the theorem immediately follows by induction.

The only interesting first move is 2→1. Let  $\gamma'$  be the result of this 2→1 move, and let  $\gamma^{\circ}$  be the result of the corresponding 2→0 homotopy move. The minimality of the sequence implies that  $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$ , and we trivially have  $H(\gamma) \leq H(\gamma^{\circ}) + 1$ . Because  $\gamma$  consists of one single curve,  $\gamma^{\circ}$  is also a single curve and is therefore connected. The curve  $\gamma^{\circ}$  is also a proper smoothing of  $\gamma'$ . Thus, Lemma 7.13, Conjecture 7.3, and induction on number of vertices imply

$$\begin{aligned} X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma) &= X(\gamma') + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma'}(\sigma) + 1 \\ &\geq X(\gamma^{\circ}) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma^{\circ}}(\sigma) + 1 \\ &\geq H(\gamma^{\circ}) + 1 \\ &\geq H(\gamma), \end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof.  $\square$

2373

## 7.3 Lower Bounds on Electrical Transformations

2374

### 7.3.1 Plane Graphs

2375

Lemma 7.4 immediately implies the following corollary through the medial graph construction; we state the corollary explicitly as it generalizes the result of Truemper's [242] that any minor of a  $\Delta Y$ -reducible plane graph is also  $\Delta Y$ -reducible.

2378

**Corollary 7.3.** *For any connected plane graph  $G$ , reducing any connected proper minor of  $G$  to a single vertex requires strictly fewer facial electrical transformations than reducing  $G$  to a single vertex.*

2380

Recall a plane graph  $G$  is *unicursal* if its medial graph  $G^\times$  is the image of a single closed curve.

2381

**Theorem 7.2.** *For every connected plane graph  $G$  and every unicursal minor  $H$  of  $G$ , reducing  $G$  to a single vertex requires at least  $|\text{defect}(H^\times)|/2$  facial electrical transformations.*

2383

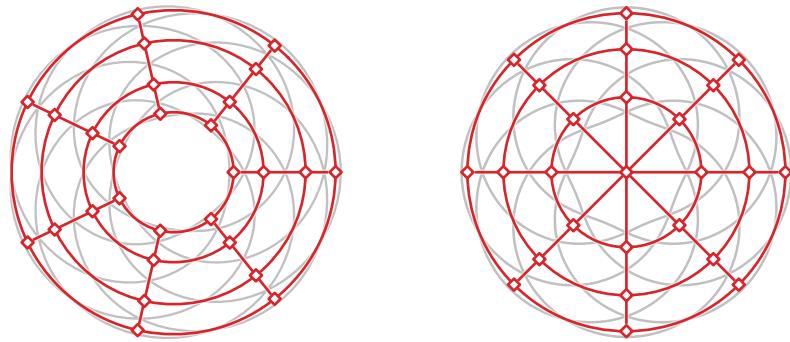
**Proof:** Either  $H$  equals  $G$ , or Corollary 7.3 states that reducing a proper minor  $H$  of  $G$  to a single vertex requires strictly fewer facial electrical transformations than reducing  $G$  to a single vertex. Note that facial electrical transformations performed on  $H$  corresponds precisely to electrical moves performed on  $H^\times$ . Now because  $\gamma := H^\times$  is unicursal, Lemma 4.1 and Lemma 7.6 implies that  $X(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma) \geq |\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$ .  $\square$

2387

We can also derive explicit lower bounds for the number of facial electrical transformations required to reduce any plane graph of treewidth  $t$  to a single vertex. For any positive integers  $p$  and  $q$ , we define two cylindrical grid graphs; see Figure 7.3.

2390

- $C(p, q)$  is the Cartesian product of a cycle of length  $q$  and a path of length  $p - 1$ . If  $q$  is odd, then the medial graph of  $C(p, q)$  is the flat torus knot  $T(2p, q)$ .
- $C'(p, q)$  is obtained by connecting a new vertex to the vertices of one of the  $q$ -gonal faces of  $C(p, q)$ , or equivalently, by contracting one of the  $q$ -gonal faces of  $C(p + 1, q)$  to a single vertex. If  $q$  is even, then the medial graph of  $C'(p, q)$  is the flat torus knot  $T(2p + 1, q)$ .



**Figure 7.3.** The cylindrical grid graphs  $C(4, 7)$  and  $C'(3, 8)$  and (in light gray) their medial graphs  $T(8, 7)$  and  $T(7, 8)$ .

2395

**Corollary 7.4.** *For all positive integers  $p$  and  $q$ , the cylindrical grid  $C(p, q)$  requires  $\Omega(\min\{p^2q, pq^2\})$  facial electrical transformations to reduce to a single vertex.*

2397 **Proof:** First suppose  $p \leq q$ . Because  $C(p-1, q)$  is a minor of  $C(p, q)$ , we can assume without loss of generality  
2398 that  $p$  is even and  $p < q$ . Let  $H$  denote the cylindrical grid  $C(p/2, ap+1)$ , where  $a := \lfloor (q-1)/p \rfloor \geq 1$ .  $H$  is a  
2399 minor of  $C(p, q)$  (because  $ap+1 \leq q$ ), and the medial graph of  $H$  is the flat torus knot  $T(p, ap+1)$ . Lemma 3.1  
2400 implies

$$\text{defect}(T(p, ap+1)) = 2a \binom{p+1}{3} = \Omega(ap^3) = \Omega(p^2q).$$

2402 Theorem 7.2 now implies that reducing  $C(p, q)$  requires at least  $\Omega(p^2q)$  facial electrical transformations.

2403 The symmetric case  $p > q$  is similar. We can assume without loss of generality that  $q$  is odd. Let  $H$  denote the  
2404 cylindrical grid  $C'(aq, q)$ , where  $a := \lfloor (p-1)/q \rfloor \geq 1$ .  $H$  is a proper minor of  $C(p, q)$  (because  $aq < p$ ), and the  
2405 medial graph of  $H$  is the flat torus knot  $T(2aq+1, q)$ . Corollary 3.1 implies

$$\left| \text{defect}(T(2aq+1, q)) \right| = 4a \binom{q}{3} = \Omega(aq^3) = \Omega(pq^2).$$

2407 Theorem 7.2 now implies that reducing  $C(p, q)$  requires at least  $\Omega(pq^2)$  facial electrical transformations.  $\square$

2408 In particular, reducing any  $\Theta(\sqrt{n}) \times \Theta(\sqrt{n})$  cylindrical grid requires at least  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transfor-  
2409 mations. Our lower bound matches an  $O(\min\{pq^2, p^2q\})$  upper bound by Nakahara and Takahashi [181]. Because  
2410 every  $p \times q$  rectangular grid contains  $C(\lfloor p/3 \rfloor, \lfloor q/3 \rfloor)$  as a minor, the same  $\Omega(\min\{p^2q, pq^2\})$  lower bound applies  
2411 to rectangular grids. In particular, Truemper's  $O(p^3) = O(n^{3/2})$  upper bound for the  $p \times p$  square grid [242] is  
2412 tight. Finally, because every plane graph with treewidth  $t$  contains an  $\Omega(t) \times \Omega(t)$  grid minor [207], reducing any  
2413  $n$ -vertex plane graph with treewidth  $t$  requires at least  $\Omega(t^3 + n)$  facial electrical transformations. Therefore, our  
2414 result answers the question by Gitler [115] and Archdeacon *et al.* [12] negatively.

2415 An interesting open question is to determine the asymptotically bound to reduce any plane graph of treewidth  $t$ .  
2416 We ambitiously conjecture that the correct answer is in fact  $\Theta(nt)$ . Of course proving this conjecture would be hard  
2417 because it implies the Feo-Provan conjecture that any plane graph can be reduced using  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical  
2418 transformations. However even a tight lower bound seems to be non-trivial as there are  $n$ -vertex planar graphs of  
2419 treewidth  $t$  that do not contain any  $\Omega(n) \times \Omega(t)$  grid minors.

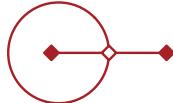
2420 **Conjecture 7.4.** Any  $n$ -vertex plane graph of treewidth  $t$  can be reduced to a single vertex using  $O(nt)$  facial  
2421 electrical transformations, and the bound is tight in the worst case.

### 2422 7.3.2 Two-Terminal Plane Graphs

2423 Most applications of electrical reductions, starting with Kennelly's classical computation of effective resistance [155],  
2424 designate two vertices of the input graph as *terminals* and require a reduction to a single edge between those  
2425 terminals. In this context, electrical transformations that delete either of the terminals are forbidden: specifically,  
2426 leaf contractions when the leaf is a terminal, series reductions when the degree-2 vertex is a terminal, and  $Y \rightarrow \Delta$   
2427 transformations when the degree-3 vertex is a terminal.

2428 Epifanov [85] was the first to prove that any 2-terminal planar graph can be reduced to a single edge  
2429 between the terminals using a finite number of electrical transformations, roughly 50 years after Steinitz proved  
2430 the corresponding result for planar graphs without terminals [230, 231]. Epifanov's proof is non-constructive;  
2431 algorithms for reducing 2-terminal planar graphs were later described by Feo [99], Truemper [242], and Feo and  
2432 Provan [100]. (An algorithm in the spirit of Steinitz's reduction proof can also be derived from results of de Graaf  
2433 and Schrijver [125].)

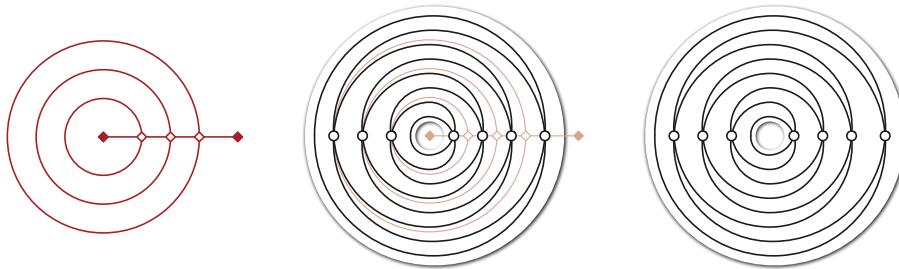
An important subtlety that complicates both Epifanov's proof and its algorithmic descendants is that not every 2-terminal planar graph can be reduced to a single edge using only *facial* electrical transformations. The simplest bad example is the three-vertex graph shown in Figure 7.4; the solid vertices are the terminals. Although this graph has more than one edge, it has no reducible leaves, empty loops, cycles of length 2 or 3, or vertices with degree 2 or 3. We will soon see that this graph cannot be reduced to an edge even if we allow "backward" facial electrical transformations that make the graph more complicated.



**Figure 7.4.** A facially irreducible 2-terminal plane graph.

Existing algorithms for reducing an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graphs to a single edge rely on an additional operation which we call a *terminal-leaf contraction*, in addition to facial electrical transformations. We discuss this subtlety in more detail in Section 7.3.4.

**Bullseyes.** The graph in Figure 7.4 is just one example of an infinite family of irreducible 2-terminal plane graphs. For any  $k > 0$ , let  $B_k$  denote the 2-terminal plane graph that consists of a path of length  $k$  between the terminals, with a loop attached to each of the  $k - 1$  interior vertices, embedded so that collectively they form concentric circles that separate the terminals. We call each graph  $B_k$  a *bullseye*. For example,  $B_1$  is just a single edge;  $B_2$  is shown in Figure 7.4; and  $B_4$  is shown on the left in Figure 7.5. The medial graph  $B_k^\times$  of the  $k$ th bullseye is the curve  $\alpha_{2k}$ , as we have seen in Section 7.2.3. Because different bullseyes have different medial depths, Lemma 7.7 implies that no bullseye can be transformed into any other bullseye by facial electrical transformations.



**Figure 7.5.** The bullseye graph  $B_4$  and its medial graph  $\alpha_8$ .

The following corollaries are now immediate from results in Section 7.2.3.

**Corollary 7.5.** Let  $G$  be an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graph. Graph  $G$  can be reduced to the bullseye  $B_k$  using a finite sequence of facial electrical transformations if and only if  $\text{depth}(G^\times) = 2k$ .

**Corollary 7.6.** Let  $G$  and  $H$  be arbitrary 2-terminal plane graphs. Graph  $G$  can be transformed to graph  $H$  using a finite sequence of facial electrical transformations if and only if  $\text{depth}(G^\times) = \text{depth}(H^\times)$ .

**Theorem 7.3.** Let  $G$  be an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graph, and let  $\gamma$  be any unicursal smoothing of  $G^\times$ . Reducing  $G$  to a bullseye requires at least  $H(\gamma) - \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$  facial electrical transformations.

In Section 4.3.2, we describe an infinite family of contractible curves in the annulus that require  $\Omega(n^2)$  homotopy moves to simplify. Because these curves are contractible, they have even depth, and thus are the medial graphs of

2459 2-terminal plane graphs. Euler's formula implies that every  $n$ -vertex curve in the annulus has exactly  $n + 2$  faces  
2460 (including the boundary faces) and therefore has depth at most  $n + 1$ .

2461 **Corollary 7.7.** *Reducing a 2-terminal plane graph to a bullseye requires  $\Omega(n^2)$  facial electrical transformations in  
2462 the worst case.*

### 2463 7.3.3 Planar Electrical Transformations

2464 We extend our earlier  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  lower bound in Section 7.3.1 for reducing plane graphs *without* terminals using only  
2465 facial electrical transformations to the larger class of planar electrical transformations. Our extension to non-facial  
2466 electrical transformations is based on the following surprising observation, shown in Section 3.3: Although the  
2467 medial graph of  $G$  depends on its embedding, the *defect* of the medial graph of  $G$  does not.

2468 Each planar electrical transformation in a planar graph  $G$  induces the same change in the medial graph  $G^\times$   
2469 as a finite sequence of 1- and 2-strand tangle flips (hereafter simply called “tangle flips”) followed by a single  
2470 electrical move. (See Section 3.3.2 for the definition of tangle flips.) For an arbitrary connected multicurve  $\gamma$  on  
2471 the sphere, let  $\bar{X}(\gamma)$  denote the minimum number of electrical moves in a mixed sequence of electrical moves  
2472 and tangle flips that simplifies  $\gamma$ . Similarly, let  $\bar{H}(\gamma)$  denote the minimum number of homotopy moves in a mixed  
2473 sequence of homotopy moves and tangle flips that simplifies  $\gamma$ . We emphasize that tangle flips are “free” and do  
2474 not contribute to either  $\bar{X}(\gamma)$  or  $\bar{H}(\gamma)$ .

2475 Our lower bound on planar electrical moves follows our earlier lower bound proof for facial electrical moves  
2476 almost verbatim; the only subtlety is that the embedding of the graph can effectively change at every step of the  
2477 reduction. We repeat the arguments here to keep the presentation self-contained.

2478 **Lemma 7.17.**  *$\bar{X}(\check{\gamma}) \leq \bar{X}(\gamma)$  for every connected proper smoothing  $\check{\gamma}$  of every connected multicurve  $\gamma$  on the  
2479 sphere.*

2480 **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be a connected multicurve, and let  $\check{\gamma}$  be a connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma$ . The proof proceeds by  
2481 induction on  $\bar{X}(\gamma)$ . If  $\bar{X}(\gamma) = 0$ , then  $\gamma$  is already simple, so the lemma is vacuously true.

2482 First, suppose  $\check{\gamma}$  is obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing a single vertex  $x$ . Consider an optimal mixed sequence of  
2483 tangle flips and electrical moves that simplifies  $\gamma$ . This sequence starts with zero or more tangle flips, followed by  
2484 a electrical move. Let  $\gamma'$  be the multicurve that results from the initial sequence of tangle flips; by definition, we  
2485 have  $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma')$ . Moreover, applying the same sequence of tangle flips to  $\check{\gamma}$  yields a connected multicurve  $\check{\gamma}'$   
2486 such that  $\bar{X}(\check{\gamma}) = \bar{X}(\check{\gamma}')$ . Thus, we can assume without loss of generality that the first operation in the sequence is  
2487 a electrical move.

2488 Now let  $\gamma'$  be the result of this move; by definition, we have  $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma') + 1$ . As in the proof of Lemma  
2489 7.4, there are several subcases to consider, depending on whether the move from  $\gamma$  to  $\gamma'$  involves the smoothed  
2490 vertex  $x$ , and if so, the specific type of move; see Figure 7.2. In every subcase, by Lemma 7.3 we can apply at most  
2491 one electrical move to  $\check{\gamma}$  to obtain a (possibly trivial) smoothing  $\check{\gamma}'$  of  $\gamma'$ , and then apply the inductive hypothesis  
2492 on  $\gamma'$  and  $\check{\gamma}'$  to prove the statement. We omit the straightforward details.

2493 Finally, if  $\check{\gamma}$  is obtained from  $\gamma$  by smoothing more than one vertex, the lemma follows immediately by induction  
2494 from the previous analysis.  $\square$

2495 **Lemma 7.18.** *For every connected multicurve  $\gamma$ , there is an intermixed sequence of electrical moves and tangle  
2496 flips that simplifies  $\gamma$  to a simple closed curve, contains exactly  $\bar{X}(\gamma)$  electrical moves, and does not contain 0→1  
2497 or 1→2 moves.*

2498    **Proof:** Consider an optimal sequence of electrical moves and tangle flips that simplifies  $\gamma$ , and let  $\gamma_i$  denote the  
 2499 result of the first  $i$  moves in this sequence. If any  $\gamma_i$  has more vertices than its predecessor  $\gamma_{i-1}$ , then  $\gamma_{i-1}$  is a  
 2500 connected proper smoothing of  $\gamma_i$ , and Lemma 7.17 implies a contradiction.  $\square$

2501    **Lemma 7.19.**  $\bar{X}(\gamma) \geq \bar{H}(\gamma)$  for every closed curve  $\gamma$  on the sphere.

2502    **Proof:** Let  $\gamma$  be a planar closed curve. The proof proceeds by induction on  $\bar{X}(\gamma)$ . If  $\bar{X}(\gamma) = 0$ , then  $\gamma$  is simple and  
 2503 thus  $\bar{H}(\gamma) = 0$ , so assume otherwise.

2504    Consider an optimal sequence of electrical moves and tangle flips that simplifies  $\gamma$ , and let  $\gamma_i$  be the curve  
 2505 obtained by applying a prefix of the sequence up to and including the first electrical move. The minimality of  
 2506 the sequence implies that  $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma') + 1$ . By Lemma 7.18, we can assume without loss of generality that the  
 2507 first electrical move in the sequence is neither  $0 \rightarrow 1$  nor  $1 \rightarrow 2$ , and if this first electrical move is  $1 \rightarrow 0$  or  $3 \rightarrow 3$ , the  
 2508 theorem immediately follows by induction.

2509    The only remaining move to consider is  $2 \rightarrow 1$ . Let  $\gamma^\circ$  denote the result of applying the same sequence of tangle  
 2510 flips to  $\gamma$ , but replacing the final  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move with a  $2 \rightarrow 0$  move, or equivalently, smoothing the vertex of  $\gamma'$  left  
 2511 by the final  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move. We immediately have  $\bar{H}(\gamma) \leq \bar{H}(\gamma^\circ) + 1$ . Because  $\gamma^\circ$  is a connected proper smoothing  
 2512 of  $\gamma'$ , Lemma 7.17 implies  $\bar{X}(\gamma^\circ) < \bar{X}(\gamma') = \bar{X}(\gamma) - 1$ . Finally, the inductive hypothesis implies that  $\bar{X}(\gamma^\circ) \geq \bar{H}(\gamma^\circ)$ ,  
 2513 which completes the proof.  $\square$

2514    **Lemma 7.20.**  $\bar{H}(\gamma) \geq |\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$  for every closed curve  $\gamma$  on the sphere.

2515    **Proof:** Each homotopy move decreases  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|$  by at most 2, and Lemmas 3.13 and 3.14 imply that tangle flips  
 2516 do not change  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|$  at all. Every simple curve has defect 0.  $\square$

2517    **Theorem 7.4.** Let  $G$  be an arbitrary planar graph, and let  $\gamma$  be any unicursal smoothing of  $G^\times$  (defined with  
 2518 respect to any planar embedding of  $G$ ). Reducing  $G$  to a single vertex requires at least  $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$  planar electrical  
 2519 transformations.

2520    **Proof:** The minimum number of planar electrical transformations required to reduce  $G$  is at least  $\bar{X}(G^\times)$ . Because  $\gamma$   
 2521 is a single curve, it must be connected, so Lemma 7.17 implies that  $\bar{X}(G^\times) \geq \bar{X}(\gamma)$ . The theorem now follows  
 2522 immediately from Lemmas 7.19 and 7.20.  $\square$

2523    The following corollary is now immediate from either Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1.

2524    **Corollary 7.8.** Reducing any  $n$ -vertex planar graph to a single vertex requires  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  planar electrical transfor-  
 2525 mations in the worst case.

### 2526    7.3.4 Terminal-Leaf Contractions

2527    The electrical reduction algorithms of Feo [99], Truemper [242], and Feo and Provan [100] rely exclusively on  
 2528 facial electrical transformations, plus one additional operation.

- 2529    • *Terminal-leaf contraction:* Contract the edge incident to a *terminal* vertex with degree 1. The neighbor of the  
 2530 deleted terminal becomes a new terminal.

2531    Terminal-leaf contractions are also called *FP-assignments*, after Feo and Provan [76, 115, 116]. Later algorithms for  
 2532 reducing plane graphs with three or four terminals [12, 76, 116] also use only facial electrical transformations and  
 2533 terminal-leaf contractions.

2534 Formally, terminal-leaf contractions are *not* electrical transformations, as they can change the target value one  
2535 wants to compute in application. For example, if the edges in the graph shown in Figure 7.4 represent  $1\Omega$  resistors,  
2536 a terminal-leaf contraction changes the effective resistance between the terminals from  $2\Omega$  to  $1\Omega$ . However,  
2537 both Gilter [115] and Feo and Provan [100] observed that any sequence of facial electrical transformations  
2538 and terminal-leaf contractions can be simulated on the fly by a sequence of *planar* electrical transformations.  
2539 Specifically, we simulate the first leaf contraction at either terminal by simply marking that terminal and proceeding  
2540 as if its unique neighbor were a terminal. Later electrical transformations involving the neighbor of a marked  
2541 terminal may no longer be facial, but they will still be planar; terminal-leaf contractions at the unique neighbor of  
2542 a marked terminal become series reductions. At the end of the sequence of transformations, we perform a final  
2543 series reduction at the unique neighbor of each marked terminal.

2544 Unfortunately, terminal-leaf contractions change both the depth of the medial graph and the curve invariants  
2545 that imply the quadratic homotopy lower bound. As a result, our quadratic lower bound proof breaks down if  
2546 we allow terminal-leaf contractions. Indeed, we conjecture that any 2-terminal plane graph can be reduced to a  
2547 single edge using only  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions, matching the lower  
2548 bound proved in Section 7.3.3. (See Section 8.1.)

# Chapter 8

## Conclusions and Open Problems

2549 *Qui rogat, non errat.*

— Latin proverb

2550

Let us conclude the thesis with a list of conjectures along with some discussion.

2551

### 8.1 Feo-Provan Conjecture

2552

Perhaps the most compelling, and the primary motivation for our work, is to decide whether  $\Theta(n^2)$  is indeed the best possible bound on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce any planar graph without terminals to a single vertex. Like Feo and Provan [100], Gitler [115], and Archdeacon *et al.* [12], we conjecture that  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transformations suffice. However, perhaps we are less certain in light of the quadratic lower bound on reducing 2-terminal plane graphs from Section 7.3.2. Similarly, it is an open question whether any 2-terminal plane graph can be reduced to a single edge using  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions, as mentioned in Section 7.3.4. Proving these conjectures appears to be challenging.

2553

2554

2555

2556

2557

2558

2559

2560

2561

**Conjecture 8.1.** *Any  $n$ -vertex plane graph can be reduced to a single vertex using at most  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transformations. Any  $n$ -vertex plane graph with two terminals can be reduced to an edge using at most  $O(n^{3/2})$  facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions.*

2562

2563

2564

2565

2566

2567

Once we go beyond facial and planar electrical transformations, none of our lower bound techniques apply, and we do not have any results about non-planar electrical transformations or electrical reduction of non-planar graphs. Indeed, the only lower bound known in the most general setting, for *any* family of electrically reducible graphs, is the trivial  $\Omega(n)$ . It seems unlikely that planar graphs can be reduced more quickly by using non-planar electrical transformations, but we can't prove anything. Any non-trivial lower bound for this problem would be interesting.

2568

2569

2570

2571

2572

2573

2574

One way to prove the Feo-Provan conjecture is to extend Theorem 5.1 to the medial electrical setting. To do so it is sufficient to provide a way to tighten any tangle of depth  $O(\sqrt{n})$  using  $O(n^{3/2})$  electrical moves, similar to Lemma 5.1. One subtle difference between the two types of local operations is that a 2→1 move cannot be realized by homotopy of curves, and therefore the strategy for proving Lemma 5.1 and Lemma 5.1 by contracting monogons and tightening strands no longer works. Lemma 5.1 can be substituted by the algorithm of Feo and Provan [100] because the input is a closed curve; however as we are about to see, their algorithm does not work on tangles.

### 2575 8.1.1 Feo-Provan's Algorithm

2576 Call an electrical or a homotopy move *positive* if it decreases the sum of the face depths; in particular, every  $1 \rightarrow 0$ ,  
2577  $2 \rightarrow 0$ , and  $2 \rightarrow 1$  move is positive. A key technical lemma of Feo and Provan implies that every non-simple curve in  
2578 the plane admits a positive homotopy move [100, Theorem 1]. Therefore, Feo and Provan's algorithm requires at  
2579 most  $O(D\Sigma)$  moves, where  $D\Sigma$  is the sum of face depths of the input curve. Euler's formula implies that every curve  
2580 with  $n$  crossings has  $O(n)$  faces, and each of these faces has depth  $O(n)$  in the worst case. Thus, the quadratic  
2581 upper bound on simplifying planar curves using homotopy moves follows from algorithm of Feo and Provan as  
2582 well.

2583 One major benefit to view Feo and Provan's algorithm through the lens of medial construction is that the  
2584 consistency of labeling scheme comes for free once we interpret the labels as depths of the faces in the medial  
2585 graph. Unfortunately, all the existing proofs of positive-move lemma [100, 189] are quite long and complicated.  
2586 Indeed, like we mentioned in Section 5.1.2, there are infinite classes of loose tangles that do not admit an positive  
2587 moves. This suggests that any proof to the lemma needs to utilize the fact that the given (multi-)curve is indeed  
2588 closed in the plane. On top of that, the proof by Feo and Provan is presented at the graph level which complicates  
2589 the presentation. Here we raise the question in search of a better proof using the language of (multi-)curves.

2590 Gitler [115] conjectured that a variant of Feo and Provan's algorithm that always makes the *deepest* positive  
2591 move requires only  $O(n^{3/2})$  moves. This conjecture is supported by the empirical results of Feo [99, Chapter 6].  
2592 Song [226] observed that if Feo and Provan's algorithm always chooses the *shallowest* positive move, it can be  
2593 forced to make  $\Omega(n^2)$  moves even when the input curve can be simplified using only  $O(n)$  moves.

### 2594 8.1.2 Steinitz's Algorithm

2595 Another possible approach is an efficient implementation of Steinitz's bigon removal algorithm. In general removing  
2596 a minimal bigon takes  $\Theta(n)$  steps, so only a quadratic upper bound follows on tightening an arbitrary tangle.

2597 It is natural to ask whether Steinitz's algorithm can be improved, either by carefully choosing which bigon  
2598 to remove in each stage, by more carefully choosing how to empty each bigon, and/or by more refined analysis.  
2599 (It is not hard to show that Steinitz's algorithm can be forced to perform  $\Omega(n^2)$  moves if the bigons are chosen  
2600 adversarially.) For example, one might repeatedly reduce the bigon containing the smallest number of faces. As  
2601 we will see in Section 8.1.3, we cannot always hope for a bigon with sublinear number of faces inside. However,  
2602 we can prove that a bigon with small *perimeter* does always exist.

2603 As electrical moves in general do not preserve the number of strands of a multicurve or a tangle, we need  
2604 to generalize the definition of tangle in this situation. In this subsection a **tangle** is a collection of boundary-to-  
2605 boundary paths  $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$  and a collection of *closed curves*  $\kappa_1, \kappa_2, \dots, \kappa_t$  in a closed topological disk  $\Sigma$ , which  
2606 (self-)intersect only pairwise, transversely, and away from the boundary of  $\Sigma$ . We call each individual path  $\gamma_i$  an  
2607 **open strand** and each closed curve  $\kappa_j$  a **closed strand**; collectively we refer to them as **strands**. A closed strand  $\kappa$   
2608 is *lingering* if  $\kappa$  does not intersect any other strands in the tangle. Throughout the subsection we assume that our  
2609 tangle does not have lingering closed strands. A tangle is **tight** if every strand is simple, every pair of open strands  
2610 intersects at most once, and otherwise all strands are disjoint; otherwise the tangle is **loose**.

2611 Let  $\Theta$  be a tangle and let  $\beta$  be a bigon in the tangle. Let  $\#on(\beta)$  denote the number of intersections between  
2612 the tangle and the boundary of an  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of the bigon  $\beta$ , for some small enough  $\varepsilon$  such that the boundary  
2613 of  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood only intersects the two curves that forms the bigon and the extension of the strands of the  
2614 bigon. Also let  $\#in(\beta)$  denote the number of vertices inside the  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of bigon  $\beta$ .

2615 Lemma 8.1. Let  $n$  be a fixed integer. Let  $\Theta$  be any loose tangle with at most  $n$  vertices, at most  $3\sqrt{n}$  open  
 2616 strands, and no lingering closed strands. Then there is either an empty monogon in  $\Theta$ , or a minimal bigon  $\beta$  with  
 2617  $\#on(\beta) \leq 8\sqrt{n}$ .<sup>1</sup>

2618 **Proof:** Let the *length* of a (not necessarily simple) subpath  $\eta$  of a planar curve  $\gamma$ , denoted  $|\eta|$ , defined to be the  
 2619 number of vertices of  $\gamma$  on  $\eta$  (counted with multiplicity). We will prove the statement by induction on the number  
 2620 of vertices inside the tangle. First we argue that whenever we found a monogon of length at most  $4\sqrt{n}$  then  
 2621 we are done. Because in this case either the monogon is empty, or we can apply the lemma recursively on an  
 2622  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of the monogon excluding the double point (as a tangle of at most  $3\sqrt{n}$  open strands); such a  
 2623 tangle cannot be tight.

2624 Consider the following three cases. First, if all strands of tangle  $\Theta$  has length at most  $4\sqrt{n}$ , the any minimal  
 2625 bigon in  $\Theta$  will have  $\#on(\beta) \leq 8\sqrt{n}$ .

2626 The second case is when there is a closed strand  $\kappa$  of length less than  $4\sqrt{n}$ . Now either there is a monogon  
 2627 formed by  $\kappa$  and we are done, or  $\kappa$  is simple. Since all the closed strands are not lingering, there must be another  
 2628 strand of  $\Theta$  intersecting  $\kappa$  at least twice. In this case we recurse on the interior tangle  $\Theta'$  formed by curve  $\kappa$ . If  $\Theta'$   
 2629 is not tight then we are done. If  $\Theta'$  is tight, let  $n'$  denote the number of vertices in  $\Theta'$  and  $s'$  denote the number of  
 2630 strands of  $\Theta'$ . As all the strands of  $\Theta'$  intersects each other at most once, we have  $n' \leq \binom{s'}{2}$  and there is a strand  $\eta$   
 2631 of  $\Theta'$  satisfying

$$2632 |\eta| \leq \frac{2n'}{s'} \leq \frac{2}{s'} \cdot \frac{s'(s'-1)}{2} = s'-1 \leq 2\sqrt{n},$$

2633 as the length of  $\kappa$  is at most  $4\sqrt{n}$ . Again if  $\eta$  has a monogon then we are done. Otherwise, either the tangle  $\Theta''$  is  
 2634 tight thus the bigon is minimal, or we can recurse on the tangle  $\Theta''$  formed by an  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of the bigon  $\sigma$   
 2635 formed by  $\kappa$  and  $\eta$  excluding the two double points, which has at most  $(2+2)\sqrt{n}/2 \leq 3\sqrt{n}$  open strands (since  
 2636  $|\kappa| \leq 4\sqrt{n}$  and  $\eta$  separates  $\kappa$  into two arcs, one of the arcs has length at most  $2\sqrt{n}$ ). In either case the statement  
 2637 is proved.

2638 The third case is when all closed strands in  $\Theta$  has length at least  $4\sqrt{n}$  (there might be no closed strands at all),  
 2639 and one of the (open or closed) strands  $\alpha$  in  $\Theta$  has length at least  $4\sqrt{n}$ . As all the closed strands in  $\Theta$  has length at  
 2640 least  $4\sqrt{n}$ , there are at most  $0.5\sqrt{n}$  closed strands in  $\Theta$ . Take an arbitrary subpath of  $\alpha$  of length  $4\sqrt{n}$  and call it  
 2641  $\eta$ . We refer to  $\alpha \setminus \eta$  as a *semi-strand* of  $\Theta$ . Now either there is an monogon in  $\eta$  of length at most  $4\sqrt{n}$  (in which  
 2642 case we are done); or  $\eta$  is a simple curve and there is another (semi-)strand of  $\Theta$  that intersects  $\eta$  with at least  
 2643 two vertices by pigeonhole principle, as there are in total at most  $(3+0.5)\sqrt{n}$  strands in  $\Theta$ , either open or closed.

2644 Now one can prove that there must be a (semi-)strand  $\lambda$  of  $\Theta$  such that

$$2645 |\lambda \cap \eta| \geq \frac{|\lambda|}{\sqrt{n}-1} + 1.$$

2646 Assume the contrary, we consider the sum over all (semi-)strands of  $\Theta$ :

$$\begin{aligned} 2647 |\eta| &= \sum_{\lambda} |\lambda \cap \eta| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}-1} \sum_{\lambda} |\lambda| \\ 2648 &\leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}-1} (2n - 4\sqrt{n}) \\ 2649 &\leq 2\sqrt{n}, \end{aligned}$$

---

2647<sup>1</sup>The constants here are not optimal. In general, an upper bound  $c\sqrt{n}$  on the number of open strands for some constant  $c \geq \frac{4}{\sqrt{6}}$  will imply  
 2648  $\#on(\beta) \leq (c + (c^2 + 8)^{1/2})\sqrt{n} \leq (2c + \frac{4}{c})\sqrt{n}$  for some minimal bigon  $\beta$ .

which is a contradiction as  $|\eta| = 4\sqrt{n}$ .

Take two points  $x$  and  $y$  on  $\lambda \cap \eta$ , such that a subpath  $\lambda'$  of  $\lambda$  from  $x$  to  $y$  (including both endpoints) has length at most

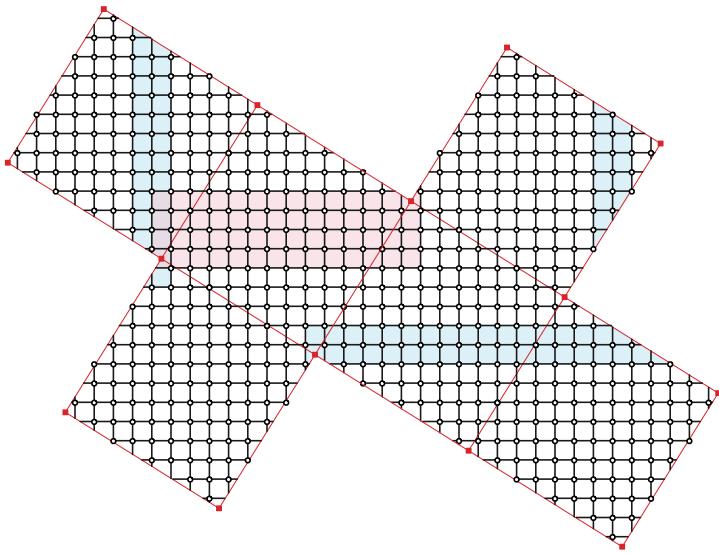
$$\left\lfloor \frac{|\lambda|-1}{|\lambda \cap \eta|-1} \right\rfloor + 1 \leq \sqrt{n}.$$

(The assumption that  $|\lambda \cap \eta| > 1$  is from the pigeonhole principle.) If  $\lambda'$  contains a monogon then we are done. Otherwise  $\lambda'$  is simple and there is a *quasi-bigon* formed by  $\lambda'$  and  $\eta$ . As  $\eta$  has length  $4\sqrt{n}$ , we again apply the lemma recursively on an  $\varepsilon$ -neighborhood of such a quasi-bigon excluding the two double points, as a tangle of at most  $(4+1)\sqrt{n}/2 \leq 3\sqrt{n}$  open strands.  $\square$

### 8.1.3 Curves where All Bigons are Large

Now we introduce an infinite family of multicurves built on Fibonacci lattices, which we call *Fibonacci cubes*, in which every bigon and monogon contains  $\Omega(n)$  faces. Prior work and applications on Fibonacci lattice include discrepancy and numerical integration [261, 262]; image processing and memory layout [58, 59, 101, 102]; data structures and lower bounds [26, 158].

For each integer  $k$ , the  *$k$ th Fibonacci cube*  $\mathcal{F}_k$  is constructed from six identical tilted square lattices on the faces of a cube. Specifically, let  $\mathcal{L}$  denote the dual of the standard integer lattice, with vertices  $(x + 1/2, y + 1/2)$  for all integers  $x$  and  $y$ , and with edges between horizontal and vertical neighbors. Let  $\mathcal{L}_k$  denote the two-dimensional Fibonacci lattice generated by the orthogonal integer vectors  $(F_{k-1}, F_k)$  and  $(F_k, -F_{k-1})$ . Each face of  $\mathcal{F}_k$  contains the restriction of  $\mathcal{L}$  with the square induced by lattice  $\mathcal{L}_k$  with vertices  $(0, 0)$ ,  $(F_{k-1}, F_k)$ ,  $(F_k, -F_{k-1})$ , and  $(F_{k+1}, F_{k-2})$ , where  $F_i$  denotes the  $i$ th Fibonacci number. The graph  $\mathcal{F}_k$  has exactly  $n_k := 6 \cdot F_{2k-1}$  vertices and thus exactly  $6 \cdot F_{2k-1} + 2$  faces.



**Figure 8.1.** An unfolded Fibonacci cube  $\mathcal{F}_6$  with two minimal bigons shaded.

Discrete Gauss-Bonnet theorem implies that every bigon in  $\mathcal{F}_k$  contains exactly two triangular faces, which must lie on the boundary by Steinitz lemma on minimal bigons (see the proof of Lemma 2.1). Any minimal bigon—unfolded into the plane—looks like a rectangle with two opposite corners clipped off (to make the triangular faces). The other two opposite corners of the rectangle are the vertices of the bigon. Thus, the number of vertices

2675 in the interior of any minimal bigon is equal to the area of an axis-aligned rectangle in the plane with two opposite  
2676 corners in the Fibonacci lattice  $\mathcal{L}_k$ . (See Figure 8.1.)

2677 We use the following elementary but crucial discrepancy property of the Fibonacci lattice [58, Lemma 7] [59,  
2678 Lemma 5].

2679 **Lemma 8.2.** *Any axis-aligned rectangle containing more than one point of the Fibonacci lattice  $\mathcal{L}_k$  has area at  
2680 least  $(F_{k-1} + 1)(F_k + 1) \geq F_{2k-1}/\sqrt{5} \geq n_k/(6\sqrt{5})$ .*

2681 **Theorem 8.1.** *Every bigon in  $\mathcal{F}_k$  contains  $\Theta(n_k)$  vertices and therefore  $\Theta(n_k)$  faces.*

2682 Erickson [90] conjectured that any Fibonacci cube  $\mathcal{F}_k$  has a constant number of constituent curves, and any  
2683 constituent curve  $\gamma$  of  $\mathcal{F}_k$  (which is a single closed curve) satisfies the following property: each face of  $\gamma$  is the  
2684 union of a constant number of faces of  $\mathcal{F}_k$ , and the number of vertices of  $\gamma$  is a constant fraction of  $n_k$ . This implies  
2685 that any bigon in  $\gamma$  contains a constant fraction of the faces of  $\gamma$ , and therefore also have linear size.

## 2686 8.2 Homotopy Moves on Low-genus Surfaces

2687 As we have seen in Section 4.3, Theorem 4.6 implies an  $\Omega(n^2)$  lower bound for tightening curves on any surface  
2688 except for the sphere, the disk, and the projective plane. Our result in Section 5.1 shows that any planar curve  
2689 and can be simplified in  $O(n^{3/2})$  moves. Now two cases remain.

### 2690 8.2.1 Tangles

2691 If we only consider closed curves on the disk, this is no different than the planar case as our tightening algorithm  
2692 does not make use of homotopy moves performed on the infinite face. (Although it is not hard to construct  
2693 examples where the optimal number of moves required depends on whether the curve lies in the sphere or the  
2694 disk.)

2695 In many ways, tangles can be viewed as curve systems on the disk. (In general, when one talks about curves  
2696 on surface without boundary, it makes sense to include all the boundary-to-boundary paths.) Our algorithm for  
2697 simplifying planar curves (Theorem 5.1) generalizes directly to tangles; besides some minor details (say one  
2698 should remove all the strands without intersections ahead of time), the only missing part is the lemma that proves  
2699 the existence of useful cycles in tangles, analogous to Lemma 3.10. If one looks closely at the proof, there are  
2700 no places where we use the assumption that the outermost contour contains the whole curve. Therefore we  
2701 summarize the result without repeating its proof.

2702 **Theorem 8.2.** *Every  $n$ -vertex tangle can be tightened in  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves.*

2703 If in addition we want to enforce monotonicity by disallowing 0→2 moves, the problem becomes open. In light  
2704 of the close relation between electrical reduction and monotonic homotopy reduction process we have seen in  
2705 Section 6.4, we believe that proving the following conjecture is as hard as its electrical counterpart, the Feo-Provan  
2706 conjecture (see Section 8.1).

2707 **Conjecture 8.2.** *Any  $n$ -vertex tangle can be tightened monotonically using  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves.*

2708      **8.2.2 Projective Plane**  
2709      The only missing case is the projective plane. Using the fact that the oriented double-cover of the projective plane  
2710      is the sphere, an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 4.6 implies an  $\Omega(n^{3/2})$  lower bound on homotopy  
2711      moves, by plugging in the lower bound for the planar case (Theorem 4.1).

2712      We left the task of finding a matching upper bound as an open question to the readers. One would expect a  
2713      solution follows from extending the useful cycle technique to the projective planar setting.

2714      **Conjecture 8.3.** *Any curves on the projective plane can be tightened using at most  $O(n^{3/2})$  homotopy moves.*

### 2715      **8.3 Monotonic Homotopy Moves on Arbitrary Surfaces**

2716      Finally, in light of Theorem 6.2 and Lemma 6.10, we conjecture that any multicurve on an arbitrary surface can be  
2717      tightened monotonically using polynomially many homotopy moves. This conjecture, if true, will generalize both  
2718      Theorem 6.2 and Conjecture 6.1.

2719      **Conjecture 8.4.** *Any multicurve on an arbitrary surface can be tightened monotonically using polynomially many  
2720      homotopy moves.*

# References

- [1] Colin Adams. Triple crossing number of knots and links. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 22(2):1350006 (17 pages), 2013. arXiv:[1207.7332](https://arxiv.org/abs/1207.7332).
- [2] Colin Adams, Thomas Crawford, Benjamin DeMeo, Michael Landry, Alex Tong Lin, MurphyKate Montee, Seojung Park, Saraswathi Venkatesh, and Farrah Yhee. Knot projections with a single multi-crossing. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 24(3):1550011 (30 pages), 2015. arXiv:[1208.5742](https://arxiv.org/abs/1208.5742).
- [3] Virgil W. Adkisson. Cyclicly connected continuous curves whose complementary domain boundaries are homeomorphic, preserving branch points. *C. R. Séances Soc. Sci. Lett. Varsovie III* 23:164–193, 1930.
- [4] Francesca Aicardi. Tree-like curves. *Singularities and Bifurcations*, 1–31, 1994. Advances in Soviet Mathematics 21, Amer. Math. Soc.
- [5] Sheldon B. Akers, Jr. The use of wye-delta transformations in network simplification. *Oper. Res.* 8(3):311–323, 1960.
- [6] James W. Alexander. Combinatorial analysis situs. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 28(2):301–326, 1926.
- [7] James W. Alexander and G. B. Briggs. On types of knotted curves. *Ann. Math.* 28(1/4):562–586, 1926–1927.
- [8] Sarah R. Allen, Luis Barba, John Iacono, and Stefan Langerman. Incremental Voronoi diagrams. *Proc. 32nd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*, 15:1–15:16, 2016. Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics 51. [⟨http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/5907⟩](http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/5907). arXiv:[1603.08485](https://arxiv.org/abs/1603.08485).
- [9] Sigurd Angenent. Parabolic equations for curves on surfaces: Part II. Intersections, blow-up and generalized solutions. *Ann. Math.* 133(1):171–215, 1991.
- [10] Tom M. Apostol. *Modular Functions and Dirichlet Series in Number Theory*, 2nd edition. Graduate Texts in Mathematics 41. Springer-Verlag, 1990.
- [11] Hideyo Arakawa and Tetsuya Ozawa. A generalization of Arnold’s strangeness invariant. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 8(5):551–567, 1999.
- [12] Dan Archdeacon, Charles J. Colbourn, Isidoro Gitler, and J. Scott Provan. Four-terminal reducibility and projective-planar wye-delta-wye-reducible graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 33(2):83–93, 2000.
- [13] Chris Arettines. A combinatorial algorithm for visualizing representatives with minimal self-intersection. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 24(11):1550058–1–1550058–17, 2015. arXiv:[1101.5658](https://arxiv.org/abs/1101.5658).
- [14] Stefan Arnborg, Andrzej Proskurowski, and Derek G. Corneil. Forbidden minors characterization of partial 3-trees. *Discrete Math.* 810:1–19, 1990.
- [15] Vladimir I. Arnold. Plane curves, their invariants, perestroikas and classifications. *Singularities and Bifurcations*, 33–91, 1994. Adv. Soviet Math. 21, Amer. Math. Soc.
- [16] Vladimir I. Arnold. *Topological Invariants of Plane Curves and Caustics*. University Lecture Series 5. Amer. Math. Soc., 1994.

- [17] Eric K. Babson and Clara S. Chan. Counting faces of cubical spheres modulo two. *Discrete Math.* 212(3):169–183, 2000. arXiv:[9811085v1](#).
- [18] Thomas Banchoff. Critical points and curvature for embedded polyhedra. *J. Diff. Geom.* 1:245–256, 1967.
- [19] Dror Bar-Natan. On the Vassiliev knot invariants. *Topology* 34:423–472, 1996.
- [20] Ara Basmajian, Hugo Parlier, and Juan Souto. Geometric filling curves on surfaces. *Bulletin of the London Mathematical Society* 49(4):660–669. Wiley Online Library, 2017.
- [21] Edward A. Bender and E. Rodney Canfield. The asymptotic number of rooted maps on a surface. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. A* 43(2):244–257, 1986.
- [22] Mark de Berg, Otfried Cheong, Marc van Kreveld, and Mark Overmars. *Computational Geometry: Algorithms and Applications*, 3rd edition. Springer-Verlag, 2008.
- [23] Sergei Bespamyatnikh. Computing homotopic shortest paths in the plane. *J. Algorithms* 49(2):284–303, 2003.
- [24] Joan S. Birman and Xiao-Song Lin. Knot polynomials and Vassiliev’s invariants. *Invent. Math.* 111:225–270, 1993.
- [25] Henry R. Brahana. Systems of circuits on two-dimensional manifolds. *Ann. Math.* 23(2):144–168, 1922.
- [26] Gerth Stølting Brodal, Pooya Davoodi, Moshe Lewenstein, Rajeev Raman, and Satti Srinivasa Rao. Two dimensional range minimum queries and Fibonacci lattices. *Proc. 20th Ann. European Symp. Algorithms*, 217–228, 2012. Lecture Notes Comput. Sci. 7501, Springer.
- [27] Gerhard Burde and Niether Zieschang. *Knots*, 2nd revised and extended edition. de Gruyter Studies in Mathematics 5. Walter de Gruyter, 2003.
- [28] Benjamin Burton, Erin Chambers, Marc van Kreveld, Wouter Meulemans, Tim Ophelders, and Bettina Speckmann. Computing optimal homotopies over a spiked plane with polygonal boundary. *LIPICS-Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics*, vol. 87, 2017.
- [29] Sergio Cabello, Matt DeVos, Jeff Erickson, and Bojan Mohar. Finding one tight cycle. *Proc. 19th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 527–531, 2008.
- [30] Sergio Cabello, Yuanxin Liu, Andrea Mantler, and Jack Snoeyink. Testing homotopy for paths in the plane. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 31:61–81, 2004.
- [31] Jaizhen Cai. Counting embeddings of planar graphs using DFS trees. *SIAM J. Discrete Math.* 6(3):335–352, 1993.
- [32] Allan Calder and Jerrold Siegel. On the width of homotopies. *Topology* 19(3):209–220. Elsevier, 1980.
- [33] Gabriel D. Carroll and David Speyer. The cube recurrence. *Elec. J. Combin.* 11:#R73, 2004.
- [34] Erin W. Chambers, Éric Colin de Verdière, Jeff Erickson, Sylvain Lazard, Francis Lazarus, and Shripad Thite. Homotopic Fréchet distance between curves or, walking your dog in the woods in polynomial time. *Comput. Geom. Theory Appl.* 43(3):295–311, 2010.
- [35] Erin W. Chambers and David Letscher. On the height of a homotopy. *Proc. 21st Canadian Conference on Computational Geometry*, vol. 9, 103–106, 2009.
- [36] Erin W. Chambers and David Letscher. Erratum for on the height of a homotopy, 2010. (<http://mathcs.slu.edu/~chambers/papers/lherratum.pdf>).
- [37] Erin Wolf Chambers, Gregory R Chambers, Arnaud de Mesmay, Tim Ophelders, and Regina Rotman. Constructing monotone homotopies and sweepouts. Preprint, August 2017. arXiv:[1704.06175](#).

- 2793 [38] Erin Wolf Chambers, Arnaud de Mesmay, and Tim Ophelders. On the complexity of optimal homotopies.  
 2794     *Proceedings of the Twenty-Ninth Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms*, 1121–1134, 2018.
- 2795 [39] Erin Wolf Chambers and Yusu Wang. Measuring similarity between curves on 2-manifolds via homotopy  
 2796     area. *Proceedings of the twenty-ninth annual symposium on Computational geometry*, 425–434, 2013.
- 2797 [40] Gregory R. Chambers and Yevgeny Liokumovich. Converting homotopies to isotopies and dividing homo-  
 2798     topies in half in an effective way. *Geometric and Functional Analysis* 24(4):1080–1100. Springer, 2014.
- 2799 [41] Gregory R Chambers and Yevgeny Liokumovich. Optimal sweepouts of a Riemannian 2-sphere. Preprint,  
 2800     June 2016. arXiv:[1411.6349](https://arxiv.org/abs/1411.6349).
- 2801 [42] Gregory R Chambers and Regina Rotman. Monotone homotopies and contracting discs on Riemannian  
 2802     surfaces. *Journal of Topology and Analysis* 1–32. World Scientific, 2016.
- 2803 [43] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Electrical reduction, homotopy moves, and defect. Preprint, October  
 2804     2015. arXiv:[1510.00571](https://arxiv.org/abs/1510.00571).
- 2805 [44] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Untangling planar curves. *Proc. 32nd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*,  
 2806     29:1–29:15, 2016. Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics 51. (<http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/5921>).
- 2807 [45] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Lower bounds for planar electrical reduction. Submitted, 2017.
- 2808 [46] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Unwinding annular curves and electrically reducing planar networks.  
 2809     Accepted to Computational Geometry: Young Researchers Forum, Proc. 33rd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.,  
 2810     2017.
- 2811 [47] Hsien-Chih Chang, Jeff Erickson, Arnaud de Mesmay, David Letscher, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan  
 2812     Thurston, and Stephan Tillmann. Untangling curves on surfaces via local moves. *Proc. 29th Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms*, 121–135, 2018.
- 2813 [48] Hsien-Chih Chang and Arnaud de Mesmay. Tightening curves on surfaces: Better and faster. Manuscript,  
 2814     2018.
- 2815 [49] Manoj K. Chari, Thomas A. Feo, and J. Scott Provan. The delta-wye approximation procedure for two-  
 2816     terminal reliability. *Oper. Res.* 44(5):745–757, 1996.
- 2817 [50] Moira Chas. Minimal intersection of curves on surfaces. *Geometriae Dedicata* 144(1):25–60. Springer, 2010.
- 2818 [51] Moira Chas. The Goldman bracket and the intersection of curves on surfaces. *Geometry, Groups and  
 2819     Dynamics: ICTS Program “Groups, Geometry and Dynamics”, December 3–16, 2012, Almora, India*, 73–83,  
 2820     2015. Contemporary Mathematics 639, American Mathematical Soc.
- 2821 [52] Moira Chas and Fabiana Krongold. An algebraic characterization of simple closed curves on surfaces with  
 2822     boundary. *J. Topol. Anal.* 2(3):395–417, 2010.
- 2823 [53] Moira Chas and Fabiana Krongold. Algebraic characteriation of simple closed curves via Turaev’s cobracket.  
 2824     *J. Topology* 9(1):91–104, 2015.
- 2825 [54] Bernard Chazelle. A theorem on polygon cutting with applications. *Proc. 23rd Ann. IEEE Symp. Found.  
 2826     Comput. Sci.*, 339–349, 1982.
- 2827 [55] Bernard Chazelle and Herbert Edelsbrunner. An optimal algorithm for intersecting line segments in the  
 2828     plane. *J. ACM* 39(1):1–54, 1992.
- 2829 [56] Sergei Chmutov and Sergei Duzhin. Explicit formulas for Arnold’s generic curve invariants. *Arnold-Gelfand  
 2830     Mathematical Seminars: Geometry and Singularity Theory*, 123–138, 1997. Birkhäuser.
- 2831 [57] Sergei Chmutov, Sergei Duzhin, and Jacob Mostovoy. *Introduction to Vassiliev knot invariants*. Cambridge  
 2832     Univ. Press, 2012. (<http://www.pdmi.ras.ru/~duzhin/papers/cdbook>). arXiv:[1103.5628](https://arxiv.org/abs/1103.5628).

- [58] Benny Chor, Charles E. Leiserson, and Ronald L. Rivest. An application of number theory to the organization of raster-graphics memory (extended abstract). *Proc. 23rd Ann. IEEE Symp. Found. Comput. Sci.*, 92–99, 1982.
- [59] Benny Chor, Charles E. Leiserson, Ronald L. Rivest, and James B. Shearer. An application of number theory to the organization of raster-graphics memory. *J. ACM* 33(1):86–104, 1986.
- [60] Kenneth L. Clarkson and Peter W. Shor. Applications of random sampling in computational geometry, II. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 4:387–421, 1989.
- [61] Marshall Cohen and Martin Lustig. Paths of geodesics and geometric intersection numbers: I. *Combinatorial Group Theory and Topology*, 479–500, 1984. Annals of Math. Studies 111, Princeton Univ. Press.
- [62] Charles J. Colbourn, J. Scott Provan, and Dirk Vertigan. A new approach to solving three combinatorial enumeration problems on planar graphs. *Discrete Appl. Math.* 60:119–129, 1995.
- [63] Éric Colin de Verdière and Jeff Erickson. Tightening non-simple paths and cycles on surfaces. *Proc. 17th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 192–201, 2006.
- [64] Éric Colin de Verdière and Jeff Erickson. Tightening non-simple paths and cycles on surfaces. *SIAM J. Comput.* 39(8):3784–3813, 2010.
- [65] Éric Colin de Verdière and Francis Lazarus. Optimal pants decompositions and shortest homotopic cycles on an orientable surface. *J. ACM* 54(4), 2007.
- [66] Yves Colin de Verdière. Réseaux électriques planaires. *Prepublications de l’Institut Fourier* 225:1–20, 1992.
- [67] Yves Colin de Verdière. Réseaux électriques planaires I. *Comment. Math. Helvetici* 69:351–374, 1994.
- [68] Yves Colin de Verdière, Isidoro Gitler, and Dirk Vertigan. Réseaux électriques planaires II. *Comment. Math. Helvetici* 71:144–167, 1996.
- [69] John H. Conway. An enumeration of knots and links, and some of their algebraic properties. *Computational Problems in Abstract Algebra*, 329–358, 1970. Pergamon Press.
- [70] Alexander Coward and Marc Lackenby. An upper bound on Reidemeister moves. *Amer. J. Math.* 136(4):1023–1066, 2014. arXiv:[1104.1882](https://arxiv.org/abs/1104.1882).
- [71] Edward B. Curtis, David Ingerman, and James A. Morrow. Circular planar graphs and resistor networks. *Linear Alg. Appl.* 283(1–3):115–150, 1998.
- [72] Edward B. Curtis, Edith Mooers, and James Morrow. Finding the conductors in circular networks from boundary measurements. *Math. Mod. Num. Anal.* 28(7):781–813, 1994.
- [73] Edward B. Curtis and James A. Morrow. *Inverse Problems for Electrical Networks*. World Scientific, 2000.
- [74] Richard Dedekind. Erläuterungen zu den Fragmenten XXVIII. *Berhard Riemann’s Gesammelte Mathematische Werke und wissenschaftlicher Nachlass*, 2nd edition, 466–478, 1892. Teubner.
- [75] Max Dehn. Über unendliche diskontinuierliche Gruppen. *Math. Ann.* 71(1):116–144, 1911.
- [76] Lino Demasi and Bojan Mohar. Four terminal planar Delta-Wye reducibility via rooted  $K_{2,4}$  minors. *Proc. 26th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 1728–1742, 2015.
- [77] Vincent Despré and Francis Lazarus. Computing the geometric intersection number of curves. *Proc. 33rd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*, 35:1–35:15, 2017. Leibniz Int. Proc. Informatics 77. arXiv:[1511.09327](https://arxiv.org/abs/1511.09327).
- [78] Giuseppe Di Battista and Roberto Tamassia. Incremental planarity testing. *Proc. 30th Ann. IEEE Symp. Foundations Comput. Sci.*, 436–441, 1989.

- [79] Giuseppe Di Battista and Roberto Tamassia. On-line planarity testing. *SIAM J. Comput.* 25(5):956–997, 1996.
- [80] Reinhard Diestel. *Graph Theory*, 5th edition. Springer Publishing Company, Incorporated, 2017.
- [81] Walther Dyck. Beiträge zur Analysis situs I. Aufsatz. Ein- und zweidimensionale Mannigfaltigkeiten. *Math. Ann.* 32(4):457–512, 1888.
- [82] Alon Efrat, Stephen G. Kobourov, and Anna Lubiw. Computing homotopic shortest paths efficiently. *Comput. Geom. Theory Appl.* 35(3):162–172, 2006.
- [83] Arno Eigenwillig and Michael Kerber. Exact and efficient 2D-arrangements of arbitrary algebraic curves. *Proc. 19th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 122–131, 2008.
- [84] Ehab S. El-Mallah and Charles J. Colbourn. On two dual classes of planar graphs. *Discrete mathematics* 80(1):21–40. Elsevier, 1990.
- [85] G. V. Epifanov. Reduction of a plane graph to an edge by a star-triangle transformation. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR* 166:19–22, 1966. In Russian. English translation in *Soviet Math. Dokl.* 7:13–17, 1966.
- [86] David Eppstein. Dynamic generators of topologically embedded graphs. *Proc. 14th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 599–608, 2003. arXiv:[cs/0207082](https://arxiv.org/abs/cs/0207082).
- [87] David B. A. Epstein. Curves on 2-manifolds and isotopies. *Acta Mathematica* 115:83–107, 1966.
- [88] Jeff Erickson. Simple polygons. Preliminary draft, 2013. <http://jeffe.cs.illinois.edu/teaching/comptop/schedule.html>.
- [89] Jeff Erickson. Efficiently hex-meshing things with topology. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 52(3):427–449. Springer, 2014.
- [90] Jeff Erickson. Personal communication, May 2018.
- [91] Jeff Erickson and Sariel Har-Peled. Optimally cutting a surface into a disk. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 31(1):37–59, 2004.
- [92] Jeff Erickson and Amir Nayyeri. Minimum cuts and shortest non-separating cycles via homology covers. *Proc. 22nd Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 1166–1176, 2011.
- [93] Jeff Erickson and Kim Whittlesey. Transforming curves on surfaces redux. *Proc. 24th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 1646–1655, 2013.
- [94] Chaim Even-Zohar. Models of random knots. *Journal of Applied and Computational Topology* 1(2):263–296. Springer, 2017.
- [95] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. Invariants of random knots and links. *Discrete & Computational Geometry* 56(2):274–314, 2016. arXiv:[1411.3308](https://arxiv.org/abs/1411.3308).
- [96] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. The distribution of knots in the petaluma model. Preprint, April 2017. arXiv:[1706.06571](https://arxiv.org/abs/1706.06571).
- [97] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. Universal knot diagrams. Preprint, April 2018. arXiv:[1804.09860](https://arxiv.org/abs/1804.09860).
- [98] Brittany Terese Fasy, Selcuk Karakoc, and Carola Wenk. On minimum area homotopies of normal curves in the plane. Preprint, July 2017. arXiv:[1707.02251](https://arxiv.org/abs/1707.02251).
- [99] Thomas A. Feo. *I. A Lagrangian Relaxation Method for Testing The Infeasibility of Certain VLSI Routing Problems. II. Efficient Reduction of Planar Networks For Solving Certain Combinatorial Problems*. Ph.D. thesis, Univ. California Berkeley, 1985. <http://search.proquest.com/docview/303364161>.

- [2914] [100] Thomas A. Feo and J. Scott Provan. Delta-wye transformations and the efficient reduction of two-terminal  
 2915 planar graphs. *Oper. Res.* 41(3):572–582, 1993.
- [2916] [101] Amos Fiat and Adi Shamir. Polymorphic arrays: A novel VLSI layout for systolic computers. *J. Comput. System Sci.* 33(1):47–65, 1986.
- [2917]
- [2918] [102] Amos Fiat and Adi Shamir. How to find a battleship. *Networks* 19(3):361–371, 1989.
- [2919] [103] George K. Francis. The folded ribbon theorem: A contribution to the study of immersed circles. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 141:271–303, 1969.
- [2920]
- [2921] [104] George K. Francis. Titus' homotopies of normal curves. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 30:511–518, 1971.
- [2922] [105] George K. Francis. Generic homotopies of immersions. *Indiana Univ Math. J.* 21(12):1101–1112, 1971/72.
- [2923] [106] George K. Francis and Jeff Weeks. Conway's ZIP proof. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 106(5):393–399, 1999.
- [2924] [107] J. P. Gadani. System effectiveness evaluation using star and delta transformations. *IEEE Trans. Reliability*  
 2925 R-30(1):43–47, 1981.
- [2926] [108] Jean Gallier and Dianna Xu. *A guide to the classification theorem for compact surfaces*. Springer Science &  
 2927 Business Media, 2013.
- [2928] [109] Carl Friedrich Gauß. Nachlass. I. Zur Geometria situs. *Werke*, vol. 8, 271–281, 1900. Teubner. Originally  
 2929 written between 1823 and 1840.
- [2930] [110] Meinolf Geck and Gotz Pfeiffer. On the irreducible characters of hecke algebras. *Advances in Mathematics*  
 2931 102(1):79–94, 1993.
- [2932] [111] Steve M. Gersten and Hamish B. Short. Small cancellation theory and automatic groups. *Invent. Math.*  
 2933 102:305–334, 1990.
- [2934] [112] Peter Giblin. *Graphs, Surfaces and Homology*, 3rd edition. Cambridge Univ. Press, 2010.
- [2935] [113] Cole A. Giller. A family of links and the Conway calculus. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*  
 2936 270(1):75–109, 1982.
- [2937] [114] Patrick M. Gilmer and Richard A. Litherland. The duality conjecture in formal knot theory. *Osaka Journal*  
 2938 *of Mathematics* 23(1):229–247. Osaka University and Osaka City University, Departments of Mathematics,  
 2939 1986.
- [2940] [115] Isidoro Gitler. *Delta-wye-delta Transformations: Algorithms and Applications*. Ph.D. dissertation, University  
 2941 of Waterloo, 1991.
- [2942] [116] Isidoro Gitler and Feliú Sagols. On terminal delta-wye reducibility of planar graphs. *Networks* 57(2):174–186,  
 2943 2011.
- [2944] [117] Jay R. Goldman and Louis H. Kauffman. Knots, tangles, and electrical networks. *Adv. Appl. Math.* 14:267–  
 2945 306, 1993.
- [2946] [118] William M. Goldman. Invariant functions on Lie groups and hamiltonian flows of surface group representa-  
 2947 tions. *Inventiones mathematicae* 85(2):263–302. Springer, 1986.
- [2948] [119] Daciberg L. Gonçalves, Elena Kudryavtseva, and Heiner Zieschang. An algorithm for minimal number of  
 2949 intersection points of curves on surfaces. *Proc. Seminar on Vector and Tensor Analysis* 26(139–167), 2005.
- [2950] [120] Jacob E. Goodman and Stefan Felsner. Pseudoline arrangements. *Handbook of discrete and computational*  
 2951 *geometry*, 3rd edition, chapter 5, 125–157, 2017. Chapman and Hall/CRC.
- [2952] [121] Gramoz Goranci, Monika Henzinger, and Pan Peng. Improved guarantees for vertex sparsification in planar  
 2953 graphs. Preprint, December 2017. arXiv:[1702.01136](https://arxiv.org/abs/1702.01136).

- [2954] [122] Maurits de Graaf. *Graphs and curves on surfaces*. Ph.D. dissertation, Universiteit van Amsterdam, 1994.
- [2955] [123] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Characterizing homotopy of systems of curves on a compact  
2956 surface by crossing numbers. *Linear Alg. Appl.* 226–228:519–528, 1995.
- [2957] [124] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Decomposition of graphs on surfaces. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*  
2958 70:157–165, 1997.
- [2959] [125] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Making curves minimally crossing by Reidemeister moves. *J.*  
2960 *Comb. Theory Ser. B* 70(1):134–156, 1997.
- [2961] [126] Matthew A. Grayson. Shortening embedded curves. *Ann. Math.* 129(1):71–111, 1989.
- [2962] [127] Keith Gremban. *Combinatorial Preconditioners for Sparse, Symmetric, Diagonally Dominant Linear Sys-*  
2963 *tems*. Ph.D. thesis, Carnegie Mellon University, 1996. <https://www.cs.cmu.edu/~glmiller/Publications/b2hd-GrembanPHD.html>. Tech. Rep. CMU-CS-96-123.
- [2964] [128] Branko Grünbaum. *Convex Polytopes*. Monographs in Pure and Applied Mathematics XVI. John Wiley &  
2965 Sons, 1967.
- [2966] [129] Doris Lloyd Grosh. Comments on the delta-star problem. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-32(4):391–394, 1983.
- [2967] [130] Leonidas J. Guibas and Jorge Stolfi. Primitives for the manipulation of general subdivisions and the  
2968 computation of Voronoi diagrams. *ACM Trans. Graphics* 4(2):75–123, 1985.
- [2969] [131] Hariom Gupta and Jaydev Sharma. A delta-star transformation approach for reliability estimation. *IEEE*  
2970 *Trans. Reliability* R-27(3):212–214, 1978.
- [2971] [132] Tobias J. Hagge and Jonathan T. Yazinski. On the necessity of Reidemeister move 2 for simplifying immersed  
2972 planar curves. *Knots in Poland III. Part III*, 101–110, 2014. Banach Center Publ. 103, Inst. Math., Polish  
2973 Acad. Sci. arXiv:0812.1241.
- [2974] [133] Sariel Har-Peled, Amir Nayyeri, Mohammad Salavatipour, and Anastasios Sidiropoulos. How to walk your  
2975 dog in the mountains with no magic leash. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 55(1):39–73, 2016.
- [2976] [134] Joel Hass and Tal Nowik. Unknot diagrams requiring a quadratic number of Reidemeister moves to untangle.  
2977 *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 44(1):91–95, 2010.
- [2978] [135] Joel Hass and Peter Scott. Intersections of curves on surfaces. *Israel J. Math.* 51(1–2):90–120, 1985.
- [2979] [136] Joel Hass and Peter Scott. Shortening curves on surfaces. *Topology* 33(1):25–43, 1994.
- [2980] [137] Chuichiro Hayashi and Miwa Hayashi. Minimal sequences of Reidemeister moves on diagrams of torus  
2981 knots. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 139:2605–2614, 2011. arXiv:1003.1349.
- [2982] [138] Chuichiro Hayashi, Miwa Hayashi, and Tahl Nowik. Unknotting number and number of Reidemeister moves  
2983 needed for unlinking. *Topology Appl.* 159:1467–1474, 2012. arXiv:1012.4131.
- [2984] [139] Chuichiro Hayashi, Miwa Hayashi, Minori Sawada, and Sayaka Yamada. Minimal unknotting sequences of  
2985 Reidemeister moves containing unmatched RII moves. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 21(10):1250099 (13 pages),  
2986 2012. arXiv:1011.3963.
- [2987] [140] John Hershberger and Jack Snoeyink. Computing minimum length paths of a given homotopy class. *Comput.*  
2988 *Geom. Theory Appl.* 4:63–98, 1994.
- [2989] [141] Arthur M. Hobbs. Letter to the editor: Remarks on network simplification. *Oper. Res.* 15(3):548–551, 1967.
- [2990] [142] Heinz Hopf. Über die Drehung der Tangenten und Sehnen ebener Kurven. *Compositio Math.* 2:50–62, 1935.
- [2991] [143] Jim Hoste. The Arf invariant of a totally proper link. *Topology and its Applications* 18(2–3):163–177. Elsevier,  
2992 1984.
- [2993]

- [2994] [144] Noburo Ito and Yusuke Takimura. (1,2) and weak (1,3) homotopies on knot projections. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 22(14):1350085 (14 pages), 2013. Addendum in *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 23(8):1491001 (2 pages), 2014.
- [2995]
- [2996]
- [2997] [145] Noburo Ito, Yusuke Takimura, and Kouki Taniyama. Strong and weak (1, 3) homotopies on knot projections. *Osaka J. Math* 52(3):617–647, 2015.
- [2998]
- [2999] [146] François Jaeger. On spin models, triply regular association schemes, and duality. *J. Alg. Comb.* 4:103–144, 1995.
- [3000]
- [3001] [147] Vaughan F. R. Jones. On knot invariants related to some statistical mechanical models. *Pacific journal of mathematics* 137(2):311–334. University of California, Department of Mathematics, 1989.
- [3002]
- [3003] [148] Camille Jordan. Sur la déformation des surfaces. *J. Math. Pures Appl. (Série 2)* 11:105–109, 1866.
- [3004] [149] Camille Jordan. Courbes continues. *Cours d'Analyse de l'École Polytechnique*, 1st edition, vol. 3, 587–594, 1887.
- [3005]
- [3006] [150] Camille Jordan. Lignes continues. *Cours d'Analyse de l'École Polytechnique*, 2nd edition, vol. 1, 90–99, 1893.
- [3007] [151] Louis H. Kauffman. *On Knots*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1987.
- [3008] [152] Louis H. Kauffman. State models and the Jones polynomial. *Topology* 26(3):395–407. Elsevier, 1987.
- [3009] [153] Louis H. Kauffman. New invariants in the theory of knots. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 95(3):195–242, 1988.
- [3010] [154] Louis H. Kauffman. Gauss codes, quantum groups and ribbon Hopf algebras. *Reviews in Mathematical Physics* 5(4):735–773. World Scientific, 1993.
- [3011]
- [3012] [155] Arthur Edwin Kennelly. Equivalence of triangles and three-pointed stars in conducting networks. *Electrical World and Engineer* 34(12):413–414, 1899.
- [3013]
- [3014] [156] Richard W. Kenyon. The Laplacian on planar graphs and graphs on surfaces. *Current Developments in Mathematics*, 2011. Int. Press. arXiv:[1203.1256](https://arxiv.org/abs/1203.1256).
- [3015]
- [3016] [157] Mikhail Khovanov. Doodle groups. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 349(6):2297–2315, 1997.
- [3017] [158] Elias Koutsoupias and David Scot Taylor. Tight bounds for 2-dimensional indexing schemes. *Proc. 17th Ann. ACM Symp. Principles Database Syst.* 52–58, 1998.
- [3018]
- [3019] [159] Marc Lackenby. A polynomial upper bound on Reidemeister moves. *Ann. Math.* 182(2):491–564, 2015. arXiv:[1302.0180](https://arxiv.org/abs/1302.0180).
- [3020]
- [3021] [160] Sergei K. Lando and Alexander K. Zvonkin. *Graphs on Surfaces and Their Applications*. Low-Dimensional Topology II. Springer-Verlag, 2004.
- [3022]
- [3023] [161] Francis Lazarus and Julien Rivaud. On the homotopy test on surfaces. *Proc. 53rd Ann. IEEE Symp. Foundations Comput. Sci.*, to appear, 2012. arXiv:[1110.4573](https://arxiv.org/abs/1110.4573).
- [3024]
- [3025] [162] Der-Tsai Lee and Franco P. Preparata. Euclidean shortest paths in the presence of rectilinear barriers. *Networks* 14:393–410, 1984.
- [3026]
- [3027] [163] John M. Lee. *Introduction to Topological Manifolds*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics 202. Springer, 2000.
- [3028]
- [3029] [164] Alfred Lehman. A necessary condition for wye-delta transformation. MRC Technical Summary Report 383, Math. Res. Center, Univ. Wisconsin, March 1963. ([www.dtic.mil/cgi-bin/GetTRDoc?Location=U2&docName=GetTRDoc&GetTRDocId=403836.pdf](http://www.dtic.mil/cgi-bin/GetTRDoc?Location=U2&docName=GetTRDoc&GetTRDocId=403836.pdf)).
- [3030]
- [3031] [165] Alfred Lehman. Wye-delta transformations in probabilistic network. *J. Soc. Indust. Appl. Math.* 11:773–805, 1963.
- [3032]
- [3033] [166] Gerard T. Lingner, Themistocles Politof, and A. Satyanarayana. A forbidden minor characterization and reliability of a class of partial 4-trees. *Networks* 25(3):139–146. Wiley Online Library, 1995.

- 3034 [167] Xiao-Song Lin and Zhenghan Wang. Integral geometry of plane curves and knot invariants. *J. Diff. Geom.*  
 3035 44:74–95, 1996.
- 3036 [168] Richard J. Lipton and Robert E. Tarjan. A separator theorem for planar graphs. *SIAM J. Applied Math.*  
 3037 36(2):177–189, 1979.
- 3038 [169] Chenghui Luo. *Numerical Invariants and Classification of Smooth and Polygonal Plane Curves*. Ph.D. thesis,  
 3039 Brown Univ., 1997.
- 3040 [170] Feng Luo. Simple loops on surfaces and their intersection numbers. Preprint, January 1998.  
 3041 arXiv:[math/9801018](#).
- 3042 [171] Feng Luo. Simple loops on surfaces and their intersection numbers. *Journal of Differential Geometry*  
 3043 85(1):73–116. Lehigh University, 2010.
- 3044 [172] Martin Lustig. Paths of geodesics and geometric intersection numbers: II. *Combinatorial Group Theory and*  
 3045 *Topology*, 501–544, 1987. Annals of Math. Studies 111, Princeton Univ. Press.
- 3046 [173] Roger C. Lyndon. On Dehn’s algorithm. *Math. Ann.* 166:208–228, 1966.
- 3047 [174] Roger C. Lyndon and Paul E. Schupp. *Combinatorial Group Theory*. Springer-Verlag, 1977.
- 3048 [175] Saunders Mac Lane. A structural characterization of planar combinatorial graphs. *Duke Math. J.* 3(3):460–  
 3049 472, 1937.
- 3050 [176] William S. Massey. *A basic course in algebraic topology*. Springer-Verlag, 1991.
- 3051 [177] August F. Möbius. Theorie der elementaren Verwandtschaft. *Ber. Sächs. Akad. Wiss. Leipzig, Math.-Phys. Kl.*  
 3052 17:18–57, 1863. *Gesammelte Werke* 2:433–471, Leipzig, 1886.
- 3053 [178] Curt Meyer. Über einige Anwendungen Dedekindscher Summen. *J. Reine Angew. Math.* 198:143–203, 1957.
- 3054 [179] Bojan Mohar and Carsten Thomassen. *Graphs on Surfaces*. Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 2001.
- 3055 [180] Ketan Mulmuley. A fast planar partition algorithm, I. *J. Symbolic Comput.* 10(3–4):253–280, 1990.
- 3056 [181] Hiroyuki Nakahara and Hiromitsu Takahashi. An algorithm for the solution of a linear system by  $\Delta$ -Y  
 3057 transformations. *IEICE TRANSACTIONS on Fundamentals of Electronics, Communications and Computer*  
 3058 *Sciences* E79-A(7):1079–1088, 1996. Special Section on Multi-dimensional Mobile Information Network.
- 3059 [182] Max Neumann-Coto. A characterization of shortest geodesics on surfaces. *Algebraic & Geometric Topology*  
 3060 1:349–368, 2001.
- 3061 [183] Zipei Nie. On the minimum area of null homotopies of curves traced twice. Preprint, December 2014.  
 3062 arXiv:[1412.0101](#).
- 3063 [184] Steven D. Noble and Dominic J. A. Welsh. Knot graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 34(1):100–111, 2000.
- 3064 [185] Tahl Nowik. Complexity of planar and spherical curves. *Duke J. Math.* 148(1):107–118, 2009.
- 3065 [186] Tahl Nowik. Order one invariants of planar curves. *Adv. Math.* 220:427–440, 2009. arXiv:[0712.4071](#).
- 3066 [187] Jane M. Paterson. A combinatorial algorithm for immersed loops in surfaces. *Topology Appl.* 123(2):205–234,  
 3067 2002.
- 3068 [188] George Pólya. An elementary analogue to the Gauss-Bonnet theorem. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 61(9):601–603,  
 3069 1954.
- 3070 [189] Sofya Pogor. *Some New Results on Three-Terminal Planar Graph Reducibility*. Ph.D. dissertation, Stevens Inst.  
 3071 Tech., 2001.

- 3072 [190] Sofya Pogor and Yoram J. Sussman. A  $\Delta$ -wye- $\Delta$  reduction for planar grid graphs in subquadratic time.  
 3073     *Algorithms and Complexity in Durham 2006: Proceedings of the Second ACiD Workshop*, 119–130, 2006.
- 3074 [191] Themistocles Politof. *A Characterization and Efficient Reliability Computation of Delta-Y Reducible Networks*.  
 3075     Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Berkeley, 1983.
- 3076 [192] Themistocles Politof and A. Satyanarayana. Network reliability and inner-four-cycle-free graphs. *Mathematics*  
 3077     of operations research 11(3):484–505. INFORMS, 1986.
- 3078 [193] Themistocles Politof and A. Satyanarayana. A linear-time algorithm to compute the reliability of planar  
 3079     cube-free networks. *IEEE Transactions on Reliability* 39(5):557–563. IEEE, 1990.
- 3080 [194] Themistocles Politof, A. Satyanarayana, and L. Tung. An  $O(n \cdot \log(n))$  algorithm to compute the all-terminal  
 3081     reliability of  $(K_5, K_{2,2,2})$  free networks. *IEEE transactions on reliability* 41(4):512–517. IEEE, 1992.
- 3082 [195] Michael Polyak. Invariants of curves and fronts via Gauss diagrams. *Topology* 37(5):989–1009, 1998.
- 3083 [196] Michael Polyak. New Whitney-type formulae for plane curves. *Differential and symplectic topology of knots*  
 3084     and curves, 103–111, 1999. Amer. Math. Soc. Translations 190, Amer. Math. Soc.
- 3085 [197] Michael Polyak and Oleg Viro. Gauss diagram formulas for Vassiliev invariants. *Int. Math. Res. Notices*  
 3086     11:445–453, 1994.
- 3087 [198] Michael Polyak and Oleg Viro. On the Casson knot invariant. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 10(5):711–738, 2001.  
 3088     arXiv:math/9903158.
- 3089 [199] Alexander Postnikov. Total positivity, grassmannians, and networks. Preprint, Sep 2006.  
 3090     arXiv:math/0609764.
- 3091 [200] Igor Prlina, Marcus Spradlin, and Stefan Stanojevic. All-loop singularities of scattering amplitudes in  
 3092     massless planar theories. Preprint, May 2018. arXiv:1805.11617.
- 3093 [201] Hans Rademacher and Emil Grosswald. *Dedekind Sums*. Carus Math. Monographs 16. Math. Assoc. America,  
 3094     1972.
- 3095 [202] Kurt Reidemeister. Elementare Begründung der Knotentheorie. *Abh. Math. Sem. Hamburg* 5:24–32, 1927.
- 3096 [203] Gerhard Ringel. Teilungen der Ebene durch Geraden oder topologische Geraden. *Math. Z.* 64(1):79–102,  
 3097     1956.
- 3098 [204] Gerhard Ringel. Über geraden in allgemeiner lage. *Elemente der Mathematik* 12:75–82, 1957.
- 3099 [205] Neil Robertson and Paul D. Seymour. Graph minors. VII. Disjoint paths on a surface. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*  
 3100     45(2):212–254, 1988.
- 3101 [206] Neil Robertson and Paul D. Seymour. Graph minors. X. Obstructions to tree-decomposition. *J. Comb. Theory*  
 3102     Ser. B 52(2):153–190, 1991.
- 3103 [207] Neil Robertson, Paul D. Seymour, and Robin Thomas. Quickly excluding a planar graph. *J. Comb. Theory*  
 3104     Ser. B 62(2):232–348, 1994.
- 3105 [208] Neil Robertson and Richard Vitray. Representativity of surface embeddings. *Paths, Flows, and VLSI-Layout*,  
 3106     293–328, 1990. Algorithms and Combinatorics 9, Springer-Verlag.
- 3107 [209] Arnie Rosenthal. Note on ‘Closed form solutions for delta-star and star-delta conversion of reliability  
 3108     networks’. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-27(2):110–111, 1978.
- 3109 [210] Arnie Rosenthal and David E. Frisque. Transformations for simplifying network reliability calculations.  
 3110     *Networks* 7(2):97–111, 1977. Erratum in *Networks* 7(4):382, 1977.

- 3111 [211] Jean-Pierre Roudneff. Tverberg-type theorems for pseudoconfigurations of points in the plane. *European*  
 3112 *Journal of Combinatorics* 9(2):189–198. Elsevier, 1988.
- 3113 [212] Alexander Russell. The method of duality. *A Treatise on the Theory of Alternating Currents*, chapter XVII,  
 3114 380–399, 1904. Cambridge Univ. Press.
- 3115 [213] A. Satyanarayana and R. Tindell. Efficient algorithms for the evaluation of planar network reliability. Tech.  
 3116 rep., Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science, Stevens Institute of Technology, March  
 3117 1993.
- 3118 [214] A. Satyanarayana and L. Tung. A characterization of partial 3-trees. *Networks* 20(3):299–322. Wiley Online  
 3119 Library, 1990.
- 3120 [215] Arthur Schönflies. Über einen Satz aus der Analysis situs. *Nachr. Ges. Wiss. Göttingen* 79–89, 1896.
- 3121 [216] Alexander Schrijver. Homotopy and crossing of systems of curves on a surface. *Linear Alg. Appl.* 114–  
 3122 115:157–167, 1989.
- 3123 [217] Alexander Schrijver. Decomposition of graphs on surfaces and a homotopic circulation theorem. *J. Comb.*  
 3124 *Theory Ser. B* 51(2):161–210, 1991.
- 3125 [218] Alexander Schrijver. Circuits in graphs embedded on the torus. *Discrete Math.* 106/107:415–433, 1992.
- 3126 [219] Alexander Schrijver. On the uniqueness of kernels. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B* 55:146–160, 1992.
- 3127 [220] Herbert Seifert and William Threlfall. *Lehrbook der Topologie*. Teubner, Leipzig, 1934. Reprinted by AMS  
 3128 Chelsea, 2003. English translation in [221].
- 3129 [221] Herbert Seifert and William Threlfall. *A Textbook of Topology*. Pure and Applied Mathematics 89. Academic  
 3130 Press, New York, 1980. Edited by Joan S. Birman and Julian Eisner. Translated from [220] by Michael A.  
 3131 Goldman.
- 3132 [222] Aleksandr Shumakovitch. Explicit formulas for the strangeness of plane curves. *Algebra i Analiz* 7(3):165–199,  
 3133 1995. Corrections in *Algebra i Analiz* 7(5):252–254, 1995. In Russian; English translation in [223].
- 3134 [223] Aleksandr Shumakovitch. Explicit formulas for the strangeness of a plane curve. *St. Petersburg Math. J.*  
 3135 7(3):445–472, 1996. English translation of [222].
- 3136 [224] C. Singh and S. Asgarpoor. Comments on “Closed form solutions for delta-star and star-delta conversion of  
 3137 reliability networks”. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-25(5):336–339, 1976.
- 3138 [225] C. Singh and S. Asgarpoor. Reliability evaluation of flow networks using delta-star transformations. *IEEE*  
 3139 *Trans. Reliability* R-35(4):472–477, 1986.
- 3140 [226] Xiaohuan Song. Implementation issues for Feo and Provan’s delta-wye-delta reduction algorithm. M.Sc.  
 3141 Thesis, University of Victoria, 2001.
- 3142 [227] Ernesto Staffelli and Federico Thomas. Analytic formulation of the kinestatis of robot manipulators with  
 3143 arbitrary topology. *Proc. 2002 IEEE Conf. Robotics and Automation*, 2848–2855, 2002.
- 3144 [228] Matthias F. M. Stallmann. Using PQ-trees for planar embedding problems. Tech. Rep. NCSU-CSC TR-85-24,  
 3145 Dept. Comput. Sci., NC State Univ., December 1985. <[https://people.engr.ncsu.edu/mfms/Publications/1985-TR\\_NCSU\\_CSC-PQ\\_Trees.pdf](https://people.engr.ncsu.edu/mfms/Publications/1985-TR_NCSU_CSC-PQ_Trees.pdf)>.
- 3146 [229] Matthias F. M. Stallmann. On counting planar embeddings. *Discrete Math.* 122:385–392, 1993.
- 3147 [230] Ernst Steinitz. Polyeder und Raumeinteilungen. *Enzyklopädie der mathematischen Wissenschaften mit  
 3148 Einschluss ihrer Anwendungen* III.AB(12):1–139, 1916.
- 3149 [231] Ernst Steinitz and Hans Rademacher. *Vorlesungen über die Theorie der Polyeder: unter Einschluß der Elemente  
 3150 der Topologie*. Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften 41. Springer-Verlag, 1934. Reprinted 1976.

- 3152 [232] John Stillwell. *Classical Topology and Combinatorial Group Theory*, 2nd edition. Graduate Texts in Mathematics 72. Springer-Verlag, 1993.
- 3153
- 3154 [233] James A. Storer. On minimal node-cost planar embeddings. *Networks* 14(2):181–212, 1984.
- 3155 [234] Peter Guthrie Tait. On knots I. *Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh* 28(1):145–190, 1876–7.
- 3156 [235] Carsten Thomassen. Embeddings of graphs with no short noncontractible cycles. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B* 48(2):155–177, 1990.
- 3157
- 3158 [236] Dylan P. Thurston. Geometric intersection of curves on surfaces. Preprint, August 2008. (<http://www.math.columbia.edu/~dpt/DehnCoordinates.ps>).
- 3159
- 3160 [237] Alexander Tiskin. Semi-local string comparison: Algorithmic techniques and applications. Preprint, November 2013. arXiv:[0707.3619](https://arxiv.org/abs/0707.3619).
- 3161
- 3162 [238] Charles J. Titus. A theory of normal curves and some applications. *Pacific J. Math.* 10:1083–1096, 1960.
- 3163 [239] Charles J. Titus. The combinatorial topology of analytic functions on the boundary of a disk. *Acta Mathematica* 106:45–64, 1961.
- 3164
- 3165 [240] Lorenzo Traldi. On the star-delta transformation in network reliability. *Networks* 23(3):151–157, 1993.
- 3166 [241] Tiffani Traver. Trigonometry in the hyperbolic plane. Manuscript, May 2014.
- 3167 [242] Klaus Truemper. On the delta-wye reduction for planar graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 13(2):141–148, 1989.
- 3168 [243] Klaus Truemper. A decomposition theory for matroids. VI. Almost regular matroids. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B* 55:253–301, 1992.
- 3169
- 3170 [244] Klaus Truemper. *Matroid Decomposition*. Academic Press, 1992.
- 3171 [245] Klaus Truemper. A note on delta-wye-delta reductions of plane graphs. *Congr. Numer.* 158:213–220, 2002.
- 3172 [246] Vladimir G. Turaev. Quantum invariants of 3-manifolds and a glimpse of shadow topology. *C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris I* 313:395–398, 1991.
- 3173
- 3174 [247] Vladimir G. Turaev. Skein quantization of poisson algebras of loops on surfaces. *Annales scientifiques de l'Ecole normale supérieure*, vol. 24, 635–704, 1991.
- 3175
- 3176 [248] Vladimir G. Turaev. Shadow links and face models of statistical mechanics. *J. Diff. Geom.* 36:35–74, 1992.
- 3177 [249] Leslie S. Valiant. Universality considerations in VLSI circuits. *IEEE Trans. Comput. C-30(2)*:135–140, 1981.
- 3178 [250] Oswald Veblen. Theory on plane curves in non-metrical analysis situs. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 6:83–98, 1905.
- 3179
- 3180 [251] Gert Vegter. Kink-free deformation of polygons. *Proceedings of the 5th Annual Symposium on Computational Geometry*, 61–68, 1989.
- 3181
- 3182 [252] Oleg Viro. Generic immersions of circle to surfaces and complex topology of real algebraic curves. *Topology of Real Algebraic Varieties and Related Topics*, 231–252, 1995. Amer. Math. Soc. Translations 173, Amer. Math. Soc.
- 3183
- 3184
- 3185 [253] Donald Wagner. Delta-wye reduction of almost-planar graphs. *Discrete Appl. Math.* 180:158–167, 2015.
- 3186 [254] Douglas Brent West. *Introduction to graph theory*, 2nd edition. Prentice hall Upper Saddle River, 2001.
- 3187 [255] Brian White. Mappings that minimize area in their homotopy classes. *Journal of Differential Geometry* 20(2):433–446. Lehigh University, 1984.
- 3188
- 3189 [256] Hassler Whitney. Congruent graphs and the connectivity of graphs. *Amer. J. Math.* 54(1):150–168, 1932.

- 3190 [257] Hassler Whitney. On regular closed curves in the plane. *Compositio Math.* 4:276–284, 1937.
- 3191 [258] Takeshi Yajima and Shin’ichi Kinoshita. On the graphs of knots. *Osaka Mathematical Journal* 9(2):155–163.
- 3192 Department of Mathematics, Osaka University, 1957.
- 3193 [259] Yaming Yu. Forbidden minors for wyy-delta-wye reducibility. *J. Graph Theory* 47(4):317–321, 2004.
- 3194 [260] Yaming Yu. More forbidden minors for wye-delta-wye reducibility. *Elec. J. Combin.* 13:#R7, 2006.
- 3195 [261] Stanisław K. Zaremba. Good lattice points, discrepancy, and numerical integration. *Annali di Matematica*
- 3196 *Pura ed Applicata* 73(1):293–317, 1966.
- 3197 [262] Stanisław K. Zaremba. A remarkable lattice generated by Fibonacci numbers. *Fibonacci Quarterly* 8(2):185–
- 3198 198, 1970. <<http://www.fq.math.ca/8-2.html>>.
- 3199 [263] Ron Zohar and Dan Gieger. Estimation of flows in flow networks. *Europ. J. Oper. Res.* 176:691–706, 2007.